

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF LABOR

In the Matter of:)
)
MINE PLANNING AND EMERGENCY)
SHELTERS WORKSHOP)

Tuesday,
April 18, 2006

National Academy of Sciences
Auditorium
2101 Constitution Avenue, N.W.
Washington, D.C.

The meeting in the above-entitled matter was
convened, pursuant to Notice, at 8:00 a.m.

BEFORE: JEFFERY KRAVITZ and
GERALD FINFINGER

PARTICIPANTS:

STEPHEN ALEWINE, Electrician/Miners Rep
Lafarge North America

RICHARD ALLWES, MSHA

LISA ARMSTRONG, Director of Marketing, Honeywell

KENT ARMSTRONG, Division Sales Manager-Canada
Draeger Safety

DAVID BAINES, Molecular Products, Ltd.
Mill End, United Kingdom

ALAN BECKER, PCCI, Inc.

ALLAN BECKMANN, Intern,
Senator Edward Kennedy Office

TERRY BENTLEY, Chief, Division of Safety, MSHA

RANDY BERRY, Senior Staff, Foster-Miller, Inc.

PARTICIPANTS (continued):

RICHARD BOSSERMAN, Cambria County Association for
the Blind

DALE BOWERS, Consultant, Mureco, Ltd.

TOM BRADY, NIOSH Spokane Research Laboratory

ADAM BROWN, Project Manager/Safety Director,
Transco

MIKE BRNICH, NIOSH - Pittsburgh Research Lab

JURGEN BRUNE, NIOSH, Pittsburgh Research Lab

KENNETH BULLOCK, MSHA

TONY BUMBICO, Corporate Safety Director,
Arch Coal, Inc.

MATTHEW BUNNER, Safety Manager,
Mulzer Crushed Stone, Inc.

ELLEN BYERRUM, BNA

BARRY CARLSON, Cargill Deicing Technology
Business Unit

SCOTT CASS, Vice President, Sales and Marketing,
ChemBio Shelter, Inc.

BRENT CHAMBERLAIN, Jerritt Canyon Mine

ELIZABETH CHAMBERLIN, General Manager-Safety,
CONSOL Energy, Inc.

HARRY CHILDRESS, Cumberland Resources

JEN COOK, GAO

BOB COX, Kennedy Metal Products

BILL CROCCO, MSHA, Coal Mine Safety and Health

TOM CUSHING, Regional Manager, ZUMRO, Inc.

BONNIE DAVIS, Regional Safety Manager,
Chemical Lime Company

PARTICIPANTS (continued):

MARY DOANE, Draeger Safety

JEFFREY DUNCAN, Director, Educational Policy
and Development, MSHA

DAVID DYE, Acting Assistant Secretary, MSHA

MARK ELLIS, President, Industrial Minerals
Association - North America

JEFFREY EVERSON, Foster-Miller, Inc.

SUSAN FELDMAN, Technical Director,
Salt Institute

ROHAN FERNANDO, Draeger Safety, Inc.

BILL FLYNN, Product Line Manager,
Biomarine, Inc.

LINDA FREDERICK, Scientific Program Administrator,
NIOSH

ROBERT FRIEND, Acting Deputy Assistant, MSHA

PETER GALVIN, House Education and Workforce
Committee

STEVE GIGLIOTTI, MSHA Technical Support

ROBERT GLATTER, MSHA, Educational Policy and
Development

MARK GOOD, Kennecott Minerals

EDWARD GREEN, Crowell & Moring

ALEX GRYSKA, Ontario Mine Rescue Manager, Mines
and Aggregates Safety and Health Association

GUNER GURTUNCA, Ph.D., Director, NIOSH -
Pittsburgh Research Laboratory

WAISS HASRAT, MSHA

IAN HOULISON, Manager, Phoenix First Response

PARTICIPANTS (continued):

PHILLIP HOVIS, Vulcan Materials

JOHN HOWARD, M.D., Director, NIOSH

DAVE HUSSEY, President, Phoenix First Response

SARAH HUSSEY, Marketing, Phoenix First Response

MIKE JENKINS, Acting Deputy Director, NIOSH -
Spokane Research Laboratory

REGINA JOHNSON, Assistant Editor, Platts

JIM JOY, Professor, University of Queensland

MICHAEL KALICH, MSHA, Coal, Division of Safety

BILL KENNEDY, Kennedy Metal Products

THOMAS KESSLER, MSHA, Educational Policy and
Development

GENE KITTS, Senior Vice President, Mining
Services, International Coal Group, Inc.

JEFFERY KOHLER, Ph.D., Associate Director for
Mining - NIOSH

JOHN KOVAC, Res. Physical Scientist, NIOSH-NPPTL

KATHLEEN KOWALSKI-TRAKOFLER, Ph.D., Research
Psychologist, NIOSH - Pittsburgh Research Lab

JEFFERY KRAVITZ, Ph.D., MSHA

JASON LAYTON, Arch, Inc.

CHARLES LAZZARA, Ph.D., NIOSH - Pittsburgh
Research Laboratory

GARY LEWIS, Maysville Mine Manager, Carmeuse

GREGORY LILLY, Midway, West Virginia

GARY LONG, Shift Foreman, BHPBilliton,
New Mexico Coal

PARTICIPANTS (continued):

MARGO LOPEZ, Ogletree Deakins

TOMMY LOUDERMILK, Operations Manager,
O-N Minerals (Filler Products Operation)

BRUCE LUNDGREN, Assistant Chief Counsel,
Office of Advocacy, Small Business Administration

MARK LUXBACHER, Chemical Lime Company

DON McCORKLE, Dep. Commissioner - Bureau of Mines
Indiana Department of Labor

DOUG McKENNA, President, Micropore, Inc.

TOM McKENNA, Vice President, Sales and Marketing,
Micropore, Inc.

OPIE McKINNEY, Virginia Department of Mines,
Minerals and Energy

STEPHEN McLAUGHLIN, Kennecott Utah Copper

TOMMY McMANUS, LaFarge North America

JACK McVEY, Midway, West Virginia

ALAN MARTIN, DMS Program Manager,
Pennsylvania Department of Environmental
Protection, Bureau of Deep Mine Safety

GILLY MARTIN, GAO

H.C. "BUD" MEYER, Advanced System Integrators

KEITH MICHAEL, Director, Oil and Gas Sales,
Pacific Consolidated Industries

MARK MICHAUD, Corporate Attorney, OX-GEN

DANIEL B. MICCIO, Vice President, Sales and
Marketing, The O.C. Lugo Co., Inc.

LEWIS MILLS, James River Coal Company

LARRY MISINAY, Kentucky Mines Manager, Carmeuse

Heritage Reporting Corporation
(202) 628-4888

PARTICIPANTS (continued):

BECKY MORRIS, National Stone, Sand and Gravel
Association

GLENN MOWERY, Environmental Manager, Honeywell

SCOTT MURRAY, Owner, Mureco, Ltd.

PAUL NESS, MineARC Systems

JAN OBERHOLZER, SIMTARS, Australia

CHRISTOPHER PAPILE, Vice President, New Ventures,
Nextech Materials, Ltd.

RORY PATON-ASH, President, Strata Products (USA)

BRIAN PETERS, E&HS Manager, Mulzer Crushed Stone

JAMES PINKLER, Hilti

T.J. PITZER, NAFTA Product Manager, Draeger Safety

JOHN RADOMSKY, MSHA

JAMES RAU, MineARC Systems, U.S. Division

DENNIS RAYMOND, Department of Labor

TIM REHAK, Mining Engineer, NIOSH-NPPTL

BILL REID, Coal News

CHARLES RICHARDS, JR., General Manager,
O-N Materials (Filler Products Operation)

DAN RIFFEE, Program Manager, Aqua Lung America

DENNIS RODDY, Pittsburgh Post-Gazette

ED ROSCIOLI, ChemBio Shelter, Inc.

CRAIG ROSS

MARY ROY, Analyst, GAO

MICHAEL RUTLEDGE, Safety Instructor, West Virginia
Office of Miners' Health Safety and Training

PARTICIPANTS (continued):

PAUL SALVATORRI, Controller, Phoenix First
Response

RALPH SANICH, Manager, Health, Safety & Training,
Interwest Mining Company

STEVE SAWYER, Professional Engineer,
Phoenix First Response

JOSEPH SBAFFONI, Bureau Director, Pennsylvania
Department of Environmental Protection,
Bureau of Mine Safety

SARA SCHIBANOFF, Senior Policy Analyst, GAO

CRAIG SCHILDER, Accident Prevention Services

JAMES SHARPE, Sharpe Media, LLC

SAM SHEARER, Chief Executive Officer,
CSE Corporation

SCOTT SHEARER, President, CSE Corporation

PHILIP SHERIDAN, Sheridan Investments, Inc.

JAMES SHERIDAN, Mine Manager, J.M. Huber Corp.

WES SHOFF, Safety Manager, Drummond Company, Inc.

PATRICIA SILVEY, MSHA

LYNN SITTERUD, Modern Mine Safety Supply

MARK SKILES, Director, MSHA, Technical Support

WALT SLOMSKI, General Engineer,
MSHA Technical Support

WILLIAM E. SLYE, Ph.D., Praxair, Inc.

ALLEN SMITH, Cambria County Association for the
Blind, Ebensburg, Pennsylvania

STEPHEN SMYTH, Mining and Energy Union,
Queensland, Australia

PARTICIPANTS (continued):

BOB SNASHALL, Department of Labor

CHARLES SNAVELY, Vice President,
International Coal Group, Inc.

MICHAEL SNOGRASS, Midway, West Virginia

KATHARINE SNYDER, Mine Safety and Health News

KEN SPROUL, MSHA

ROB STALDER, Vulcan Materials

GERALD STICKLER, National Sales Manager - Mining,
Ocenco, Inc.

STAN SUBOLESKI, Commissioner, FMSHRC

DAVID TANT, EHS Manager, O-N Minerals

KIMBERLI TATTON, Modern Mine Safety Supply

TERRY TAYLOR, MSHA

MIKE THIBOU, On-Site Gas Systems

DWAYNE TOWERY, Gamma Services

JACK TRACKEMAS, Foundation Coal

LESTER TUPPER, Vice President, Sales,
Strata Products

KOBUS VAN ZYL, CSIR, South Africa

FLOYD VARLEY, NIOSH - Spokane Research Laboratory

LEWIS WADE, Ph.D., Senior Science Advisor, NIOSH

ANDRZEJ WALA, Professor, University of Kentucky

GEORGE WATSON, Vice President,
Phoenix First Response

BRUCE WATZMAN, Vice President, Safety and Health,
National Mining Association

PARTICIPANTS (continued):

DAVID WAUGH, Mine Manager, Mosaic Potash

RYAN WEBB, PCCI, Inc.

MIKE WERNER, NIOSH

GEOFF WHITTAKER, MineARC Systems

DERMOT WINTERS, Technical Specialist,
Defense, Nuclear Facilities Safety Board

KELVIN WU, Ph.D., MSHA

DAVID M. YOUNG, President, Bituminous Coal
Operators' Association

LINDA ZEILER, Deputy Director, MSHA,
Technical Support

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25

P R O C E E D I N G S

(8:00 a.m.)

MR. KRAVITZ: Let me introduce myself. Jeff Kravitz, Chief, Mine Emergency Operations for Technical Support. We also have Guner Gurtunca.

MR. GURTUNCA: My name is Guner Gurtunca. I'm the director of Pittsburgh Research Lab, NIOSH.

MR. KRAVITZ: Obviously, there has been a change - - Mr. Howard will speak to that later -- about Jerry Finfinger. It's something good about that. The first good thing today besides all of you showing up.

Okay. It's my pleasure to introduce David Dye, the acting assistant secretary for MSHA. David came to the Department of Labor in June 2001, where he served as deputy assistant secretary for the Employment and Training Administration, the ETA. After coming to Washington in 1983, David served as counsel to the Senate Committee on Commerce, Science and Transportation; director of external affairs for the Maritime Administration, the U.S. Department of Transportation; and counsel for the chairman of the Federal Maritime Commission.

He returned to Capitol Hill in 1991, where he served as chief counsel for the House Committee on Resources, chief counsel for the House Committee on Agriculture, and chief counsel for the Senate Committee on

1 Energy and Natural Resources.

2 Prior to coming to Washington, David served as
3 professional staff to two committees in the Alaska Senate,
4 as special assistant to the lieutenant governor of Alaska
5 and as a regional and urban planner with the Department of
6 Community and Rural Affairs in Alaska.

7 David received his bachelor of arts degree in 1970
8 for the University of Texas at Austin and was admitted to
9 the Alaska Bar after graduating from the Franklin Pierce Law
10 Center in Concord, New Hampshire, in 1979. He resides in
11 Bethesda, Maryland, with his wife and daughter. Please
12 welcome David Dye.

13 (Applause.)

14 MR. DYE: Thank you, Jeff. Can you hear me all
15 right? Good acoustics.

16 Well, good morning, all of you, and thank you for
17 coming today. I know that all of you realize the importance
18 of this workshop and its potential for saving lives, and I'm
19 grateful that many of you took the time to come here and
20 share your knowledge and expertise with us.

21 I also want to thank the mine safety experts at
22 both MSHA and NIOSH for providing their technical support
23 and expertise to help us set up and run the workshop today,
24 and a special thanks to Dr. John Howard for agreeing to co-
25 sponsor this workshop, for his untiring efforts to make

1 mines safe in this country. Thank you, John.

2 The mine emergencies that we've had this year have
3 shown us that we in the mining industry must focus on
4 better, safer ways to evacuate miners when there is a mine
5 emergency. It's clear that we must improve mine escape
6 planning and reemphasize that the first priority for any
7 underground miner in an emergency should be quite simply to
8 evacuate the mine. That is important and bears repeating
9 often. There is no doubt, just get out. When your life is
10 on the line, get out of the mine. This is an important
11 point that often becomes obscured in discussions of how to
12 deal with mine emergencies and rescuing miners who may be
13 trapped.

14 The cruel fact of mine emergencies is this:
15 Because of the catastrophic nature of most of these
16 emergencies -- fire and explosion -- miners who are able to
17 evacuate the mine immediately or shortly after the emergency
18 begins are dramatically more likely to survive than miners
19 who stay in place waiting for rescue.

20 Our mine rescue teams in this country are the best
21 in the world. They must obey, like all of us, the laws of
22 physics. They will not be able to enter the mine after an
23 explosion or fire until it is safe enough for them to do so.

24 By the time the heat and lethal gases return to the levels
25 which permit them to enter the mine, those waiting for

1 rescue will often, unfortunately, have perished from those
2 very same hazards. We must continue to emphasize that
3 miners must make every attempt to evacuate a mine whenever
4 possible during an emergency.

5 MSHA has taken some additional steps towards
6 instituting other measures to protect miners who may become
7 involved in a mine emergency. On March 9, we published in
8 the Federal Register an emergency temporary standard. This
9 is only the third time in the history of the Mine Act that
10 we have done this. The emergency temporary standard
11 contains provisions applicable to all underground coal mines
12 on self-contained self-rescuer storage and their use,
13 evacuation and training, and the installation and
14 maintenance of life lines.

15 We believe that the availability of supplemental
16 SCSRs can increase the supply of oxygen, added life lines to
17 guide miners along evacuation routes when visibility is
18 poor, more frequent evacuation drills to condition miners to
19 escape quickly, and proper training on how to transfer from
20 one SCSR to another will help ensure that miners have a
21 better chance of escaping from a mine emergency.

22 The ETS also includes requirements for immediate
23 notification applicable to all underground and surface
24 mines. Mine operators must notify MSHA within 15 minutes of
25 determining an accident has occurred so that coordination of

1 appropriate mine rescue and other emergency response can
2 begin as soon as possible.

3 We are beginning to hold public hearings on the
4 ETS throughout the country. The upcoming ones include April
5 24 in Denver, Colorado; April 26 in Lexington, Kentucky;
6 April 28 at our headquarters in Arlington, Virginia; and May
7 9 in Charleston, West Virginia. We will also accept written
8 comments until May 30, 2006. You can find more information
9 about this on our Web site. We welcome and encourage your
10 input, just as we need your input here today.

11 Today, in this workshop, we plan to take a look at
12 mine escape planning, including the recent history of mine
13 escapes, warning systems, and the use of self-rescue devices
14 and life lines. The tragedies at Sago and Aracoma Alma No.
15 1 have given us impetus to take another look at the concept
16 of rescue chambers in coal mines. Today, we will discuss
17 emergency shelters, including the history and use of
18 emergency shelters, how mine design has changed since the
19 1980s, shelter placement in the mine, configuration and
20 construction, life support instrumentation, communication,
21 training, and other issues.

22 However, advocates of emergency shelter should
23 keep in mind that coal is a fuel, and in a coal mine a fire
24 has virtually unlimited fuel to consume. While the story of
25 the miners in the potash mine in Canada who waited for

1 rescue in their emergency shelter had a good outcome, it
2 should be remembered that potash is a fire retardant, not a
3 fuel.

4 There are unique and special issues surrounding
5 the placement of emergency shelters in coal mines, and we
6 must be careful that technological innovation does not
7 endanger rather than help underground miners.

8 One thing I hope today that is discussed in detail
9 is the concept of expectations training, in other words,
10 training to better prepare miners for conditions they may
11 encounter during a mine escape, including traveling through
12 smoke and knowing what they will experience while wearing an
13 SCSR. Miners must also be trained at how to exchange a used
14 SCSR for a new SCSR in potentially lethal atmospheres -- no
15 easy task.

16 Now, just how important this kind of training can
17 be was brought home to me by an unsolicited e-mail I
18 received just a week ago today. A coal miner in
19 Pennsylvania with 35 years of experience in various mines
20 around the state wrote to me to tell me of training he had
21 received at a mine fire school. As part of the training,
22 the mines were subjected to a smoke-filled environment. I
23 want to relate to you the most important parts of the e-
24 mail.

25 "During this exercise, we were to don the SCSR and

1 find our way out of a small maze that was built in a van
2 truck. I must say that this was the single most
3 enlightening experience of my mining career. I had been
4 around small mine fires before but nothing where I had to
5 simulate an evacuation drill such as this. Even though I
6 knew that I was in no danger, I became somewhat
7 apprehensive. I soon realized that even with all of this
8 training that I have received over many years, I am not
9 fully prepared to escape in a severe mine emergency."

10 His concluding sentence was even more powerful:
11 "Please take this into consideration because, speaking from
12 experience, we are not prepared."

13 That e-mail really hit home with me. I hope it
14 does the same for you. It's clear that we must look into
15 requiring obscured-vision safety training for miners and
16 make a strong effort to see that we can provide it. I'm
17 convinced that it will save lives.

18 Now, while we're discussing the issue of mine
19 escape planning and evacuation here today, we must keep in
20 mind that however strong our desire to keep miners safe and
21 healthy, we must use the best, proven technology available.

22 There is a great deal of new technology out there and as
23 many great ideas to go along with that as there are
24 technologies. But great ideas and spiffy, new bells and
25 whistles that sound good and look good may not perform when

1 the chips are down. Technology grows by leaps and bounds.
2 There is something new under the sun every day.

3 Now, technology does have a central place in mine
4 safety. However, we cannot afford to rely on unproven,
5 untested technologies to save miners' lives. We have too
6 much at stake.

7 Before I conclude, I want to remind you that
8 Thursday and Friday this week, April 20 and 21, there will
9 be a mine safety conference of international and national
10 experts in Wheeling, West Virginia. MSHA and NIOSH will
11 join the office of Governor Joe Manchin and the State of
12 West Virginia in co-sponsoring the International Mining
13 Health and Safety Symposium at Wheeling Jesuit University.
14 This upcoming, two-day symposium will focus on different
15 topics than this workshop that are no less critical to mine
16 safety in this country. People interested in attending can
17 register by calling the Robert C. Byrd Technology Transfer
18 Center. Just ask anyone for assistance here if you're not
19 already registered.

20 Once again, thank you for taking the time to come
21 today and help us address this topic that is so critical to
22 mine safety in this country. It's no exaggeration to say
23 that people's lives are depending on what we can accomplish.

24 Thank you.

25 (Applause.)

1 MR. GURTUNCA: I would like to invite Dr. John
2 Howard to say a few words. Dr. Howard is the director of
3 NIOSH.

4 (Applause.)

5 MR. HOWARD: Thank you and good morning, everyone.
6 Welcome to Washington on this beautiful spring day. I want
7 to thank you on behalf of all of my colleagues at the
8 International Institute of Occupational Safety and Health
9 and the Mining Safety and Health Program in Pittsburgh,
10 Pennsylvania, and Spokane, Washington, for joining us here
11 today.

12 In NIOSH, our job is to generate new knowledge and
13 transfer that knowledge into practice globally, so it's
14 entirely fitting that we're here today at the National
15 Academy of Sciences to discuss the latest scientific
16 advances and to push those advances into the future for
17 miners throughout the globe. It's very important that you
18 all know that at NIOSH we think that knowledge is more than
19 just knowing. Knowledge is doing, and it's extremely
20 important for us today that we realize that this is a
21 workshop. We're all supposed to work today towards taking
22 the knowledge that we have, identifying the knowledge gaps
23 that we have, and move forward so that we can protect the
24 safety and health of all miners.

25 It's very fitting that we're having this

1 conference today here. This is the day that, at NIOSH, we
2 celebrate the tenth anniversary of our National Occupational
3 Research Agenda, and across town, at the L'Enfant Plaza
4 Hotel, we're having a conference this afternoon to launch
5 our second decade of the National Occupational Research
6 Agenda. So it's extremely important that we hear from all
7 of you today about what mining safety and health issues need
8 to be added to that agenda, and I would invite any and all
9 of you to participate in that agenda. The Mining Safety and
10 Health Program has a research sector council that we would
11 be happy to invite any of you to participate on, and if you
12 need more information about that, please see me or anyone
13 else here from NIOSH.

14 Lastly, I want to welcome our international
15 visitors. This is going to be a busy week for all of us.
16 As David said, we're having this conference today and
17 another one sponsored by the governor of West Virginia later
18 in the week. So this is a very important week for mining
19 safety and health.

20 Again, I want to thank you for coming to our
21 seminar today and our workshop today and invite you all to
22 attend the West Virginia conference. Thank you very much
23 for coming.

24 (Applause.)

25 MR. KRAVITZ: Thank you very much. A few more

1 housekeeping things that you should be knowledgeable about.

2 We're making a transcript of the proceedings today. That
3 transcript will be available on the MSHA Web site. We are
4 also going to put all of the PowerPoints from the
5 presentations up on the MSHA and the NIOSH Web sites. I'm
6 sure that we'll be doing that jointly in all aspects here.

7 We will also be identifying an agenda for research
8 so we can feed that into whatever capabilities NIOSH has,
9 depending upon their budget limitations, I'm sure, and we
10 are going to jointly be doing a report for the whole
11 conference trying to sum up and trying to identify those
12 issues that need to be emphasized for the research agenda.

13 So we have a pretty ambitious proceeding after
14 this conference, and we invite you to give comments along
15 the way.

16 Our first speaker for the technical session this
17 morning is Michael Brnich. Mike is employed with NIOSH,
18 formerly Bureau of Mines, the Pittsburgh Research Lab, since
19 1984. For more than 20 years, he has worked in health and
20 safety research where his principal interests focused on
21 teaching and measuring mine emergency skills.

22 I've worked with Mike. He is a very capable
23 person. Basically, he has authored and co-authored more
24 than 50 technical presentations. Many of them are available
25 on the NIOSH Web sites and go way back. Mr. Brnich holds a

1 B.S. in mining engineering from the Pennsylvania State
2 University. He worked in the underground coal industry in
3 various capacities, including a mining engineer, industrial
4 engineer, safety trainer, shuttle car operator, and general
5 inside laborer.

6 Mr. Brnich is a certified mine safety
7 professional. He is a member of the International Society
8 for Mine Safety Professionals and the SME and the National
9 Mine Rescue Association. So, Mike, welcome aboard.

10 MR. BRNICH: Thank you for the introduction, Jeff,
11 and good morning to all of you. My association with Jeff
12 goes back many years, and we've spent a lot of time in the
13 mines together on various issues on mine emergency response
14 and self-rescue and escape.

15 Our presentation this morning is kind of the
16 philosophy of mine escape, particularly as it relates to
17 escape planning. This is an area that we had worked on for
18 many, many years back at the NIOSH Pittsburgh Research
19 Laboratory. Those of us who have worked in this area
20 include myself, Dr. Kathleen Kowalski-Trakofler, whom you
21 will hear speaking later this afternoon on psychological and
22 training issues related to mine emergency escape; also Dr.
23 Launa Mallett, Dr. Charlie Voigt, and Mr. William Weehagen
24 back in Pittsburgh; and also a good, close friend and
25 colleague of ours, now retired from the University of

1 Kentucky, Dr. Henry Cole.

2 Our principal work here has looked at issues
3 related to mine emergency escape, and in the context of the
4 work that we have done, we had the opportunity back in the
5 early 1990s to interview 48 underground coal miners. Each
6 one of those individuals escaped from one of three different
7 mine fires that occurred in southwestern Pennsylvania.

8 We were particularly interested in the escape
9 issues that these people encountered when they had to escape
10 these mine fires. We weren't interested in particular
11 details of the fire in terms of where it originated, what
12 the causal factors were, but we were more interested in what
13 these people go through when they have to escape such an
14 event. This was something that no one, to our knowledge,
15 had ever done before.

16 So we went out, and we interviewed these miners,
17 and we asked them to talk about their escape experiences,
18 and what we found globally was that their escape situations
19 varied tremendously in terms of complexity. Some of these
20 miners escaped with little, if any, difficulty when they had
21 to escape the event, but others encountered some very
22 complex escape scenarios.

23 When we looked at our workers, we were able to
24 identify eight distinct escape groups, and these groups
25 ranged anywhere from three individuals to as many as 10

1 individuals from one working section. At that time, these
2 mines averaged in age at 42. They had an average of 17
3 years' mining experience. It was a pretty seasoned group of
4 people. Most of them had at least 15 years' experience at
5 the mine they were working at when the fire occurred.

6 We conducted these interviews. Two of us would go
7 out into the field to interview these individuals. We
8 interviewed them privately, pretty much one on one. These
9 interviews lasted anywhere from 45 minutes to, in several
10 cases, as long as two hours. We asked our miners to begin
11 by telling us their experiences from the time they perceived
12 that there was a problem until they reached safety outside
13 the mine. We used a preconstructed interview instrument
14 which we had particular questions we were looking to receive
15 answers for, and then after the miners would tell us their
16 story, we would go back and take a look at that
17 questionnaire and fill in details where we wanted more
18 information.

19 With the miners' permissions, we audiotaped each
20 of these sessions and then had these sessions transcribed,
21 and this resulted in over 2,000 pages of transcribed
22 testimony. If you stack it up on the table, it's about this
23 thick.

24 We then took all of the testimony, and the group
25 of us involved in this began to read through all of this

1 testimony, all 2,000-plus pages, and analyzed miners'
2 responses for various things that they discussed.

3 One of the things we were able to do, and this is
4 kind of the crux of what I'm going to talk about this
5 morning, is we were able to construct what we call a "model
6 of judgment and decision-making." That is the mental
7 process that these miners go through when they have to
8 escape. It looks like a pretty complex model, but when you
9 look at it, it actually works out pretty simplistically.

10 Miners are always faced with what we call a
11 nominal problem, the main problem they are dealing with, and
12 that is the mine fire that's involved but factoring in what
13 we call background problems and context filters, background
14 problems being problems secondary to that main event:
15 smoke-filled entries, toxic atmospheres, in some cases -- in
16 fact, in a number of cases -- miners unfamiliar with the
17 escapeways they had to travel.

18 Context filters; what are we talking about there?

19 What we found, and this is typical human nature -- all of
20 us do this -- is even though miners were beginning to
21 receive cues that there was a problem going on, they tried
22 to couch those cues in the context that this is something
23 normal going on. For example, one miner we interviewed
24 said, "I initially smelled work in my working section. I
25 didn't think anything of it. I thought maybe the track crew

1 was working somewhere out by and attaching bonds to the rail
2 joints on the track rails coming in." So he never gave it
3 much thought that something much more serious was unfolding.

4 People will then move into what we call the
5 problem perception phase. That is where now they are
6 starting to take all of the information that's coming into
7 them -- it might be verbal information that's communicated,
8 sensory information, smells, smoke, whatnot -- begin to put
9 all of this together and make a diagnosis right here that
10 there is a major problem going on. Once they have
11 determined that there is something serious happening, now
12 they begin this phase of looking at all of the possible
13 options that they have in order to deal with the situation,
14 but we find that other factors affect this, especially the
15 diagnosis. Information uncertainty affects it.

16 Of the 48 miners that we talked to, two of those
17 miners knew where the fire was. Two knew. Forty-six other
18 miners did not know where the fire was. That simple lack of
19 information had a profound effect on choices that people
20 ultimately had to make. As a result, stress factored in.
21 Complexity of the escape factored in.

22 Once mines looked at all of the options that they
23 had, in some cases they had no choices and had to come back
24 and do more diagnoses before they could actually make
25 choices about how to proceed during the escape and then

1 executed their decisions.

2 A very complex process that they went through, and
3 this is not a one-time process. All during their escapes --
4 in some cases, these escapes were 45 minutes to 55 minutes
5 in length -- this process continued throughout their escape
6 process.

7 What were some of the things that we learned
8 initially? First of all, we learned that people tended to
9 perceive the problem in adequately at first. In other
10 words, many people, even though they were starting to get
11 important information, important cues, they really did not
12 take these situations seriously. We found that the
13 diagnosis that people made about what was going on was
14 definitely affected by the warning messages that they
15 received. In some cases, one group of three miners received
16 a message simply, hey, back the machinery out of the working
17 phases; we're going out. These three miners had no idea
18 that there was a fire in the mine.

19 Choices that people had to make were heavily
20 impacted by their knowledge of the mine and the quality of
21 the information. In at least one of these mines, a number
22 of the workers affected were working in areas of the mine
23 that they had never worked in before, so they were not
24 familiar with the working areas, and they were not familiar
25 with escapeways.

1 We found that the quality of leadership affected
2 decision-making. When we look in the context of a normal,
3 everyday work day, we typically look to the supervisor as
4 being the leader, and under normal production circumstances,
5 they probably are good leaders, but what we come to find was
6 when these emergency situations started to unfold, some of
7 the individuals who may be good leaders on a normal work day
8 were certainly not the best leaders when having to escape
9 these fires.

10 And, finally, we found that the actions that these
11 escapees took varied in quality.

12 Some observations we made: Without a doubt,
13 workers will form a group. In no case did single workers
14 come out alone. They always came together and formed a
15 group, whether it was a group of three or a group of 10.
16 Generally, people will actively participate in the process
17 of judgment and decision-making. As we talked to these
18 crews, these individuals, we asked them, what was going on
19 on your section when you talked about this? Pretty much
20 everybody had input in terms of what the crew was going to
21 do. However, we found that individuals, even though they
22 might have a difference of opinion, generally they would go
23 along with what was decided.

24 A very important one right here: Miners will take
25 risks to help each other, and that is something you have to

1 be prepared for. It happens. What are we talking about?
2 We're talking about miners at one operation, three of them,
3 when the crew reached safety out by the fire, they realized
4 one miner was missing. Three mines donned fresh SCSRs and
5 went back in looking for that miner. It happens.

6 In another case, a miner went down. The crew
7 decided, we're going to stay back with this miner; the rest
8 of you go ahead. It takes a lot of guts to stay behind in
9 smoke with a miner who can't make it out, but, again, we
10 know that this happens.

11 Also we found that when leadership breakdown
12 occurs, usually you're going to see leaders emerge. In
13 fact, in some cases, some of the leaders who emerged were
14 some of the last people that you would expect to emerge as
15 leaders in the event.

16 Some recommendations we can talk about: One thing
17 is that mines have to be aware of that time element
18 involved. You don't have all day to procrastinate and
19 decide what you're going to do because fires can move very
20 rapidly. I think it's important to talk with individuals
21 about the ramifications of keeping your groups together as
22 opposed to splitting up. There are pros and cons to this.
23 Again, you have to be prepared for the fact that people are
24 going to help each other if a fellow miner has problems.

25 It's also good to look at individuals who identify

1 leadership qualities, especially who could function as good
2 leaders under emergency situations.

3 So let's talk a little bit about how all of this
4 plays into escaping a mine fire. What were some of the
5 background problems that people had to deal with? Well,
6 again, they include smoke-filled entries, and these smoke-
7 filled entries varied in situations where people had
8 visibility as much as 30 to 40 feet but, in some cases, less
9 than five feet. They had toxic atmospheres that they had to
10 deal with. Miners had problems wearing their SCSRs. It
11 wasn't because the SCSR didn't work; they did work. It's
12 simply that miners did not know what to expect in terms of
13 how those apparatuses work when they wear them, and, of
14 course, leadership breakdowns occurred.

15 Context filters; again, as one miner said, he
16 thought the track crew was out installing bonds at the track
17 joints.

18 Another miner, who was a fire boss, he discovered
19 one of the fires. He initially was walking the track entry,
20 and he smelled smoke. He said, "I didn't think it was
21 anything. I thought maybe we just had a hot conveyor belt
22 roller on the conveyer." He said, "I continued on down the
23 track." He went for another 1,000 feet before he hit smoke,
24 and then when he hit smoke, he realized there was something
25 more than just a hot roller on the belt.

1 Again, information uncertainty: a big problem for
2 a lot of these people simply because they did not know where
3 these fires were located.

4 Miner has to endure stress. David Dye alluded to
5 this in his presentation, the miner who sent him the e-mail.

6 For most of these miners, this was the first time they had
7 ever been in smoke. In fact, of the miners we talked to,
8 only two of them had ever been in smoke before, and those
9 people were former mine rescue team members.

10 People didn't know how far they had to travel
11 because they didn't know where the fire was. They didn't
12 know if they had 2,000 feet to go or two miles to go.
13 Again, miners had very limited knowledge of escapeways.
14 Again, several of these crews, the mine had realigned crews,
15 and the miners were sent to different sections that they had
16 never worked on before, and so they were not familiar with
17 that area. They had limited visibility.

18 I think a very important one is that miners
19 encountered smoke in areas where they anticipated it not to
20 be. A good example of this: One crew, a three-entry,
21 longwall development section. Smoke had already made its
22 way up on the section through the intake airway. The miners
23 said, Well, we knew the smoke was going to be going back
24 down the return airway. Ah, we're going to go out the belt
25 line because we know the belt line is on a separate split of

1 fresh intake air. Well, that crew started down that belt
2 line, went about 600 feet, and all of a sudden hit a wall of
3 smoke, and now these miners start to experience even more
4 stress. They are saying, How did this smoke get in this
5 belt line? It shouldn't be here. So some of the things
6 that people have to deal with.

7 How about decisions? These are just a handful of
8 the kinds of decisions people had to make. Who should lead
9 the group? Is the foreman the best person to lead the group
10 out or someone else?

11 I talked about breakdown of leadership. One crew
12 started to escape. Actually, it was this crew that was
13 coming out of six west mines here. That particular crew had
14 a boss who was not familiar with that area of the mine. He
15 finally reached a point where he said, I don't know how to
16 get us out of here. The last person you would expect to
17 step forward was the continuous miner operator. He had been
18 a former fire boss or mine examiner. He knew the mine. He
19 said, I'll lead us out, and that is who emerged as the
20 leader.

21 Miners have to decide how to go out of the mine.
22 Should they ride out on the man trip or personnel carriers
23 or should they walk out? What routes should they take?
24 Should they follow their designated escapeways, which is
25 what we teach people? In some cases they did, but in other

1 cases they decided to follow the haulage track. Some
2 followed belt lines. Some even followed return airways.

3 Very importantly: When to don their self-
4 contained self-rescuers? As I said, a lot of these miners
5 didn't know where the fire was, and many of them delayed
6 donning their SCSRs. In fact, they delayed donning them
7 and, in some instances, traveled in smoke for about 15
8 minutes before they put the units on simply because they
9 didn't know how far to go, and they knew they only had a
10 limited supply of oxygen.

11 Whether or not the group should split up, and
12 whether or not to leave a disabled miner behind. At one of
13 these mine fires, a crew was coming up that was the crew
14 that followed the belt line up. They traveled about 900 to
15 1,000 feet when one of their miners went down, a large man.
16 I interviewed him. He was about six, three, about 300
17 pounds. He went down, and he said he just could not
18 continue. Now you have to make a choice: Do you leave this
19 miner behind, or do you leave? What this crew decided to
20 do, they split the crew up. Three miners stayed behind with
21 the downed miner. The other four headed out to try to get
22 help, a very critical decision that they had to make.

23 Some basic conclusions we can come to: First,
24 it's important that we teach our miners critical judgment
25 and decision-making. Miners have got to know what they are

1 going to have to be dealing with. We have to train our
2 people to know our escapeways. When I worked underground,
3 we would walk our escapeways regularly, and we always had
4 miners who said, I don't feel like walking today, but guess
5 what? This boy did. I knew my way out of that mine.

6 Conducting smoke training -- imperative. Anybody
7 that's never been in smoke, you don't know what it's like.
8 I've been there, a former volunteer firefighter. I know
9 what it's like to be in heavy smoke.

10 Train miners in communication skills. This is
11 very important also. We talked about communications
12 systems. We talked about communication equipment, but even
13 with the best communication equipment, if you don't give
14 good information, that equipment or system is not going to
15 help you at all.

16 Finally, identify potential leaders, especially
17 people who would make good leaders in the event of a mine
18 emergency.

19 I've given you just a brief overview. This is an
20 area that I probably could give you about a two-hour
21 workshop on, but we have published a document called
22 Behavioral and Organizational Dimensions of Underground Mine
23 Fires. I only have about four copies of it out on the
24 information table. I do have one more copy in my satchel.
25 It is available. All of the things I talked about plus

1 other topics as well -- leadership issues, information
2 uncertainty, miners' experiences in smoke, miners'
3 experiences wearing SCSRs -- can all be found in this
4 particular document. If you want a hard copy, if you see me
5 sometime today, I'll be happy to take your business card and
6 get you a hard copy, or you can come to the NIOSH mining Web
7 site, and right here is the link that will take you right to
8 the PDF. You can download the entire presentation from
9 there.

10 Jeff, that's all I have, and if anybody has any
11 quick questions for me. Yes, Bill?

12 BILL: Mike, I presume that thousands of copies of
13 your study have been distributed in the industry. If these
14 same questions were asked today, would you expect different
15 answers?

16 MR. BRNICH: I don't think so. I think if we
17 looked at other events, even the more recent events, I think
18 we're going to see the same patterns. I really do.

19 (Applause.)

20 MR. KRAVITZ: Okay. One other feature we've
21 incorporated into this workshop, we have John Gibson, Tim
22 Rehak, who will be circulating up and down the aisles. They
23 are going to be passing out index cards, if you raise your
24 hand when you see them. John, could you stand up, and Tim?
25 We're going to ask you, if you have any questions, please

1 put them on the index cards. The final session will be a
2 panel devoted solely to answering all of your questions.
3 We'll try to do that as best as possible. If there is time
4 between sessions, if we have some extra time, we'll try to
5 sprinkle some of those questions in there, too.

6 Okay. Our next speaker is going to speak on the
7 recent history of mine escapes, mine emergencies, a very
8 knowledgeable person, Mike Kalich. Mike has been with MSHA
9 for 19 years. Primarily, before that, he was with U.S.
10 Steel for 14 years. He has a master's degree in safety from
11 Marshall University, a bachelor of science in mine
12 engineering from WVU. Certifications include the SME;
13 certified electrician, State of West Virginia; certified
14 mine foreman, State of Pennsylvania; certified assistant
15 mine foreman, State of Pennsylvania; and certified mine
16 safety professional. He belongs to the SME A-17 Committee
17 for Mine Elevators, a member of the SME, and he is a former
18 mine rescue team member, so very knowledgeable.

19 Mike, please come forward.

20 (Applause.)

21 MR. KALICH: I'm Mike Kalich, and I'm a senior
22 mining engineer for Mine Safety and Health, and I will be
23 speaking on the recent history of mine escapes, and I have
24 six mines that I will be discussing, being Sago, Alma,
25 Leverage, Willow Creek, Jim Walters, and Queecreek. The Sago

1 and Alma discussions will be limited, though, due to the
2 ongoing investigation.

3 The Sago mine explosion will be first. It
4 occurred on January 2, 2006. This is a map of the mine, and
5 it shows the mine entrance, the route of travel into the
6 mine, and the two working sections being the two left
7 sections and the one left section.

8 On the morning of the accident, the mine was
9 preshifted, and prior to the men entering the mine, the mine
10 was found safe to enter. At 6 a.m., the one-left and two-
11 left crews entered the mine, the two-left crew being a few
12 minutes ahead of the one-left crew, and the two-left crew
13 had already entered the two-left section. As the one-left
14 crew approached the entrance to one-left, the explosion
15 occurred.

16 The one-left crew was able to successfully escape
17 from the mine, and MSHA and the state and the mine rescue
18 crews were called, and mine rescue crews entered the mine
19 and systematically explored the mine and made their way to
20 the one-left section where they explored the entrance to the
21 one-left section. It was then determined to advance toward
22 the two-left section. Again, the mine rescue team set up a
23 fresh air base near the mouth of the two-left section, and
24 exploration proceeded from that point.

25 The mine rescue teams found the first victim in

1 this area near the mouth of the two-left section, and they
2 then proceeded to the sealed area where the seals were
3 constructed and found that the seals had been destroyed by
4 the explosion. The mine rescue teams then entered the two-
5 left section, and they discovered the man-trip car that had
6 been used by the two-left section crew. They also found
7 evidence of the SCSRs that had been opened and had been
8 used.

9 The crews then proceeded toward the face area of
10 two-left searching for the crew, and they subsequently found
11 the crew in the face area behind a barricade. One miner was
12 alive, and he was brought to the surface and transported to
13 the hospital, and the other 11 crew members were found
14 deceased in the face area, and they were also brought out of
15 the mine.

16 The next mine I have is the Aracoma mine. This
17 was a mine fire, and it occurred on January 19, 2006. The
18 fire occurred near the Number 9 long-walk conveyor belt.
19 The underground mine personnel proceeded to exit the mine.
20 However, 12 miners were on the 11 head gate development
21 section, and those miners also exited the mine, but they
22 encountered heavy smoke, and two of the miners became
23 separated from the group. Despite the initial rescue
24 efforts, the two miners could not be located. The mine
25 rescue activities began, and the two missing miners were

1 discovered deceased on January 21. That's a photograph of
2 the belt conveyor that was involved in the fire.

3 The next mine I have is Consolidation Coal
4 Company, Leverage No. 22, and this was a mine fire that
5 occurred on February 14, 2003. It occurred near the Sugar
6 Run Portal Slope Bottom. The underground mine personnel
7 were safely evacuated from the mine in this instance.

8 The fire reportedly started when a mine car loaded
9 with garbage contacted the trolley wire. Miners at the
10 scene attempted to extinguish the fire but were not
11 successful. One of the miners received burns to his hands
12 and suffered from smoke inhalation. All of the openings to
13 the mine were sealed, and water was pumped down the slope in
14 an attempt to extinguish the fire.

15 A map of the area in question. Coal was
16 transported out of the mine by belt conveyor to the Sugar
17 Run Slope Bottom. It is then transported by conveyor up the
18 slope to the surface where the preparation plant is located.

19 The track system is used for supplies, and the fire
20 occurred in this area. As a mine car was being pushed into
21 a side track, it derailed and contacted the trolley wire and
22 caught the contents of the mine car on fire.

23 The next mine I'll talk about is Plateau Mining
24 Corporation Willow Creek Mine. On July 31, 2000, a series
25 of four explosions occurred on the D-3 longwall. While

1 attempting to extinguish the flames behind the shields,
2 another explosion occurred that fatally injured two of the
3 miners. The entire mine was evacuated, and the surviving
4 eight miners on the D-3 longwall received various degrees of
5 injuries. Two of the miners were severely injured and could
6 not be evacuated with the other miners, and they remained
7 behind on the D-3 longwall section. That was done due to
8 the injuries of the other miners. They just were not able
9 to carry the other two miners out of the mine with them.

10 The mine rescue teams entered the mine, and they
11 were able to rescue the two injured miners that were left
12 behind. They also recovered the two bodies of the deceased
13 miners.

14 The D-3 longwall section; it is a two-entry
15 development, and the head gate is located right in this
16 area. The initial explosion was believed to be in the head
17 gate area caused by a roof fall that ignited methane and
18 also ignited hydrocarbons.

19 The men on the section attempted to extinguish the
20 flames but were not successful, and a second explosion
21 occurred that fatally injured two of the miners. Another
22 miner that was on the face was able to use his 10-minute
23 SCSR. Everyone at the mine carried 10-minute SCSRs. He was
24 able to don his 10-minute SCSR, escape off the face to the
25 head gate area where a cache of self-rescuers was stored,

1 and he was successfully able to transfer to a 60-minute SCSR
2 and escaped the mine. Other miners on the section also used
3 the 60-minute SCSRs. The two miners that were left behind
4 also used SCSRs while they awaited the rescue from the
5 rescue teams that came back in.

6 A personal emergency device system was also in use
7 at this mine, and this system, the PED system, enabled text
8 messaging to be transmitted to personnel underground. The
9 use of this system was instrumental in alerting the miners
10 underground of the need to evacuate. The miners in the
11 active and remote areas of the mine at the time of the
12 explosion were notified through the PED system and were able
13 to safely evacuate the mine.

14 A photograph of the PED system. It's an LED
15 readout mounted to the top of the cap lamp, and it says,
16 "Everyone needs to come out. Fire."

17 The mine also had an approved SCSR storage plan.
18 On the longwall, 60-minute SCSR caches were maintained on
19 both the head gate and tail gate and on the man trips. All
20 miners carried 10-minute SCSR units. Some of the miners on
21 the 3-D longwall donned the SCSRs, as I mentioned earlier,
22 and were able to safely escape or await rescue.

23 The next mine is Jim Walter Resources No. 5 Mine,
24 and this accident, explosion, occurred on December 23, 2001.
25 It occurred on the four section. While attempting to

1 rescue one miner who was too injured to make it out
2 following the initial explosion because he was left behind
3 in the initial evacuation, 12 additional miners from various
4 parts of the mine had assembled and were going to the four
5 section. These miners were fatally injured in a second
6 explosion. Of the 32 miners that were inside the mine at
7 the time of the explosion, 19 escaped, and mine rescue teams
8 entered the mine and rescued one injured miner who later
9 succumbed to his injuries.

10 A map of the mine shows the portal entrances.
11 It's a shaft mine, direction of travel to the four section.
12 This is the area where the explosion occurred. A detailed
13 map of the area shows the location of the battery-charging
14 station was in this crosscut. The mine roof was initially
15 permanently supported with 72-inch, fully grouted bolts, and
16 what occurred here was the roof conditions were
17 deteriorating in this area, and four miners were assigned
18 the task to install additional roof supports, and they were
19 in there building cribs at the time of the explosion.

20 The roof started working while they were in there,
21 and a roof fall occurred at the battery-charging station.
22 When the cave-in occurred, it released methane from the
23 strata, and believed it was ignited by the battery. In the
24 roof fall, the battery was damaged, and it resulted in an
25 explosion, ignition to the methane. During the initial

1 explosion, it damaged a number of the ventilation controls
2 in the section also.

3 Just a depiction of the battery charger and the
4 battery. As I mentioned earlier, the methane was released
5 from the overlying strata, damaged the battery, and the
6 arcing ignited the methane.

7 A photograph of the battery shows the damage. The
8 lids, the covers, were damaged, which caused arcing on the
9 battery terminals, which ignited the methane.

10 Two of the miners donned SCSRs and traveled out of
11 the section to get help. The dust and smoke impaired their
12 visibility, and a third miner also escaped off the section.

13 These fellows were unable to carry the fourth miner out
14 because of the injuries that the other miners had received,
15 so he was left behind. They met the other 12 rescuers that
16 were coming from various areas of the mine en route to the
17 four section. Other miners deenergized the high-voltage
18 power, but they failed to deenergize a block haulage light
19 system that was used at the mine.

20 As I mentioned earlier, the initial explosion
21 damaged critical ventilation controls and disrupted the air
22 flow to the section and allowed methane to accumulate. The
23 12 miners that were traveling to the section to attempt to
24 rescue the lone injured miner that was left behind, as they
25 approached the section, it's believed that the block light

1 system was activated and resulted in a second explosion that
2 resulted in the fatal injuries to the 12 miners that were
3 attempting the rescue.

4 This is a depiction of the second explosion,
5 believed to have occurred near the end of the track on the
6 block light system. It traveled into the face area and
7 picked up coal dust and additional methane, and then the
8 explosive forces traveled back out of the section to the
9 front of the section and over toward the three east area and
10 resulted in the fatal injuries of the miners that were
11 attempting the rescue.

12 Nineteen miners successfully exited the mine, and
13 mine rescue teams were organized, and a rescue effort was
14 initiated. Mine rescue teams found one severely injured
15 miner and three deceased miners located out by the mouth of
16 four section, and the injured miner was transported to the
17 surface, where he later died from his injuries on September
18 24.

19 On the morning of September 24, it was concluded
20 that the missing miners could not have survived the effects
21 of the explosions, and the rescue efforts were abandoned due
22 to fire and other unsafe conditions. After lengthy recovery
23 operations, the 12 remaining victims were recovered by
24 November 8.

25 The last mine is the Quecreek Mine, and that was a

1 water inundation, as I'm sure everyone is probably aware.

2 It was opened into the upper -- coal seam. The coal is
3 approximately four feet thick and accessed from four portals
4 from a box cut.

5 On the afternoon shift, on Wednesday, July 24, 18
6 miners entered the mine. Nine miners were in the two-left
7 section, and nine mines were in the one-left section, and
8 the one-left section was approaching the old Saxman Mine,
9 but the mining projections that were available indicated the
10 mine was just developed to this area when, in fact, it was
11 extended further into the Quecreek reserves. The one-left
12 miners accidentally cut into the Saxman Mine, which resulted
13 in water inundation. The water flowed into the mine and
14 flowed toward two-left. The one-left miners notified the
15 two-left miners that they had cut into water, and the two-
16 left miners narrowly escaped the rising water, and they were
17 able to make it out of the mine.

18 The one-left miners were unable to evacuate, and
19 they took refuge in the face areas, which was the area that
20 had the highest elevation in the mine. By 2:30 a.m., the
21 water was reported about at this level, and eventually the
22 water built to the point where it was to the outside of the
23 mine and filled the box cut.

24 A six-inch bore hole was drilled into the mine to
25 attempt to locate the miners, and at this time, contact was

1 not able to be made with the miners, but an air compressor
2 was installed on the surface, and compressed air was
3 injected through the bore hall. It created an air bubble
4 which prevented the water from rising to the level where the
5 miners were located. A number of pumps were installed, and
6 a major effort was made to pump the water out of the mine.

7 By Thursday, the water was at 1,852 feet and had
8 stabilized, and we were gaining on the water. The water was
9 starting to recede. A rescue bore hole was drilled near the
10 six-inch bore hole with the intent of lowering the rescue
11 capsule into the mine to be able to bring the nine trapped
12 miners to the surface. During this time, there were some
13 problems with the drilling. The drill bit had broken. It
14 had to be removed from the hole, repaired, inserted back
15 into the hole.

16 Of course, during this time, a second rescue bore
17 hole was started with the thought that it may penetrate the
18 mine before the first rescue bore hole. But as it turned
19 out, the water, during the time that these rescue bore holes
20 were being drilled, they had gained enough on the water
21 where it was just about to the level where it was felt that
22 it would be low enough where the miners could safely reach
23 that rescue bore hole. In the interim, the water was again
24 pumped down to a safe level. The rescue bore hole was holed
25 into the mine. The miners were contacted. At that point,

1 communication was established with the miners, and they were
2 told to go down to the area where the rescue bore hole was,
3 and they would be hoisted out of the mine on the escape
4 capsule.

5 One of the many photographs that I'm sure you've
6 all seen where the miners have been brought to the surface.

7 That's one of the miners brought out of the capsule.

8 Another photograph of another of the individuals. Again,
9 another photograph of a miner in the rescue capsule that was
10 successfully brought to the surface.

11 On July 28 at 2:45 a.m., all nine miners had been
12 successfully rescued and brought to the surface. That
13 concludes my program. Thank you.

14 (Applause.)

15 MR. KRAVITZ: Okay. Mike is on staff here in D.C.
16 at our Arlington headquarters. John Radomsky is also on
17 staff. He is the action investigation program manager for
18 Metal and Nonmetal. He is a certified mine safety
19 professional who holds a bachelor of arts degree from --
20 Scott College. Prior to entering college, he worked in
21 shaft and slope development in underground coal mining.

22 In 1975, John began his career as a mine inspector
23 for the Mine Safety and Health Administration. He was
24 promoted to supervisory special investigator in 1984 and to
25 assistant district manager for the South Central District in

1 1991. John was promoted to the present position as action
2 investigation program manager in 2002. Please welcome John
3 Radomsky.

4 (Applause.)

5 MR. RADOMSKY: Good morning. On behalf of Felix
6 Quintana, who is the acting administrator for Metal and
7 Nonmetal, I want to thank you for inviting me to participate
8 in the conference this morning.

9 The program talks about recent emergencies in
10 Metal and Nonmetal, and Jeff has asked me to speak about a
11 couple of things this morning, kind of throw them out there
12 for everybody to comment on and think about.

13 In the early seventies, in Kellogg, Idaho, there
14 was a tragedy that occurred at the Sunshine Mine that
15 resulted in the death of almost 100 persons who were trapped
16 by carbon monoxide and smoke following a fire that initiated
17 from spontaneous combustion. Metal and Nonmetal
18 regulations, under 30 C.F.R. Part 57, contain stipulations
19 in 11050 which deal with escapeways and refuges and in 11052
20 which specifically identify what refuge areas -- we'll take
21 a quick look at 11050 first.

22 As I said, 11050 under 57 pertains to metal and
23 nonmetal mines, but it stipulates that there must be two
24 separate, properly maintained escapeways from the lowest
25 levels which are so positioned that damage to one shall not

1 lessen the effectiveness of the others. A method of refuge
2 shall be provided while a second opening to the surface is
3 being developed.

4 Now, as David Dye explained to us this morning,
5 and we all realize, things are a little bit different with
6 coal. Coal, being a fuel and very combustible, poses very
7 different risks.

8 The regulation under B further stipulates that in
9 addition to these two separate escapeways, if miners cannot
10 reach the surface within one hour's time from their work
11 area, then a method of refuge shall be provided for these
12 miners.

13 11052 talks about some of the criteria for these
14 refuge areas. There are not a lot of guidelines. However,
15 it does say fire-resistant construction, preferably in
16 untimbered areas of the mine, large enough to accommodate
17 readily the normal number of persons, constructed so they
18 are gas tight, provided with compressed air and water lines.

19 I think we can all be proud of the mining
20 industry's efforts to improve safety over the past couple of
21 decades. I know it's a pleasure to go into the mines today
22 compared to when I worked in them more than 30-some years
23 ago, and probably the greatest advancement to the prevention
24 of fires in metal and nonmetal mines is the fact that we're
25 using methods other than large timber sets to control the

1 back and control the ground.

2 Presently, out of the 220-some metal and nonmetal
3 mines that exist in the United States today, 18 of those
4 mines are required to maintain refuge areas because the
5 miners at the locations where they are assigned cannot reach
6 the surface within one hour. However, as a credit to the
7 metal and nonmetal folks in this country, 21 additional
8 mines that are not required to maintain refuge areas have
9 installed them in an effort to provide an extra measure of
10 safety to the men and women that work there.

11 We're going to look at a couple of refuge areas
12 that I've got JPEGs on. The first refuge areas that I'm
13 going to show you are maintained at an underground platinum
14 mine in Montana. Access and egress is provided by declines
15 to the mining levels. Each of the refuge areas is located
16 so that miners can reach them in 30 minutes or less. They
17 are provided with water, air, telephone, tools and
18 materials; however, there are no carbon dioxide scrubbers or
19 food.

20 You can see that they mine on the 500-foot level,
21 the 1,300-foot, and the 3,200-foot. The first refuge area
22 that you can see is a portable unit, six feet wide, 10 feet
23 long, and six and a half feet high, mounted on skids so it
24 can be relocated. A close-up of the air and water line
25 connections. This mine also maintains a leaky feeder

1 communications system, and this is part of what they use to
2 notify all miners in the case of an emergency.

3 Metal and nonmetal mines, as I said, we have a
4 large variety. In the underground sector, we mine
5 everything from gold to stone to talc to potash to trona to
6 zinc, lead, salt. This particular refuge area is in an
7 underground limestone in Kentucky that mines on multiple
8 levels and uses decline entries for access and egress. But
9 because there is limited egress from the lower development
10 level, they established a refuge area.

11 Now, true, limestone is not combustible, but in
12 today's modern mining we use large mobile equipment even
13 underground: 75-ton haul trucks, large front-end loaders.
14 These are big areas, and if this equipment does catch on
15 fire, it generates tremendous amounts of smoke and heat,
16 oftentimes burning for more than 24 hours before they
17 extinguish themselves.

18 So the hazards in metal and nonmetal, although in
19 a noncombustible ore body, for the greatest part, are still
20 significant. When one of these fires does occur in a metal
21 and nonmetal mine, because of the size of the entry and
22 because of the ventilation configuration, ventilation is
23 often disrupted, and smoke is transported in areas that
24 normally are fresh air intakes.

25 This refuge area has not been used in any actual

1 emergencies, as was the case in the one that we showed you
2 from Montana. It contains water and air lines, a telephone
3 to the surface, and it's located about 100 feet from the
4 work areas. The inside of it is kind of spartan in
5 appearance, but it's got the essentials that every miner
6 would appreciate if his ability to get out of that entry
7 were blocked by a piece of equipment that had accidentally
8 caught on fire.

9 The third refuge areas that we're going to look at
10 this morning are being maintained in an underground zinc
11 mine in New York accessed by two vertical shafts. None of
12 these refuge areas have had to be used in any actual
13 emergencies to this date. As you can see, there is a
14 portable unit at the 3,900-foot level and one permanent and
15 one portable at 2,500 foot, and mining takes place on five
16 different levels of this multilevel operation.

17 Toilet facilities, first aid supplies, additional
18 bottled water, tools, and material are also provided by this
19 mining company, which is more than the criteria called for
20 in the regulation.

21 This is most typical of a metal and nonmetal
22 refuge area that we're going to view. Most of them are
23 built by drilling and blasting into the hanging wall or foot
24 wall, establishing roof bolts and wire mesh, building a wall
25 out of noncombustible material, putting a metal door on it,

1 and meeting your air-tightness and fire-resistant
2 requirement in this manner.

3 Now, the next picture is the inside of Refuge Area
4 No. 3, which is similar to Refuge Area 5. You can see that
5 they have blasted this in a large configuration, secured it,
6 and have everything they need inside. Now, when they move
7 from this level to another level, they will simply leave it.

8 They may take the door if they have no plans to come back
9 here because they can reuse that when they build the next
10 one, but this is typical to the permanent types of refuge
11 areas in metal and nonmetal mines in the USA: some of the
12 supplies and equipment inside some of the refuge areas.

13 Now metal and nonmetal does not have a requirement
14 that mining companies have to provide self-contained self-
15 rescuers for their miners. The metal and nonmetal miners
16 wear filter-type self-rescuers. The filter-type self-
17 rescuers provide the ability to convert carbon monoxide into
18 carbon dioxide by adding, through a chemical process,
19 another oxygen molecule. There are a few metal and nonmetal
20 mines that have elected to purchase self-contained self-
21 rescuers on their own, but this number would be less than a
22 handful.

23 Here is a look at a portable refuge area that's
24 also in the same mine in New York. As you can see, they
25 made this one themselves. It's kind of spartan on the

1 inside but built air tight and would be welcome, indeed,
2 following any emergency.

3 Let's talk about some recent emergencies.

4 Fortunately, in metal and nonmetal we haven't, in the recent
5 decade, had a situation where we have had a death following
6 a mine fire or an explosion, but we have had what we
7 consider emergencies.

8 On February 2, we had a mobile scaling unit catch
9 on fire in Missouri. This mine uses a stench system where
10 they dump into the intake ventilation air ethylmercaptan,
11 which is easily recognized by its odor, and that's the
12 signal to get out. The miners in this case did not need to
13 use their self-rescuers.

14 The scaling unit was not equipped with a fire-
15 suppression system. The operator of the scaling unit had a
16 hand-held extinguisher but was unable to put the fire out.

17 The next day, at an underground gold mine, we had
18 a mobile jumbo drill catch on fire. Again, the operator was
19 unable to extinguish it with a hand-held extinguisher. He
20 went to the phone, called outside. The stench was dumped in
21 the ventilation, and in 12 minutes all six miners working
22 underground were able to evacuate. Two of the miners,
23 however, did utilize their self-rescuer as they had to drive
24 through smoke-filled entries.

25 February was a busy month in metal and nonmetal.

1 We had a mobile scoop unit catch fire at an underground salt
2 mine that mines at a depth of 2,300 feet. This unit was
3 equipped with an automatic fire-suppression system; however,
4 the system was unable to put the fire out. This mine
5 maintains and utilizes a leaky feeder communications system.

6 All miners were notified immediately through the
7 communications system. All 40 people working underground
8 got out within one hour. Am I right, Barry?

9 BARRY: Yes.

10 MR. RADOMSKY: Thank you. The miners did not have
11 to use their self-rescuers.

12 No matter what system we design or install, and no
13 matter how well we train our miners, the key to being safe
14 and preventing an emergency, I believe, rests with
15 maintaining our equipment in A-1 condition: the elimination
16 of hydraulic leaks, the proper maintenance of insulation on
17 electric wiring, and a good preventive maintenance program
18 that keeps our equipment in A-1 shape, including our fire-
19 suppression systems, including our seal-monitoring systems.

20 We wouldn't think of operating our personal automobile with
21 a basic safety feature malfunctioning or nonoperative. Nor
22 should we allow these conditions to exist in the mines where
23 we work every day.

24 The industry is to be commended, I think, for the
25 progress they have made. I think their record is very good.

1 However, I think there is still room to do a better job. We
2 can do a better job as inspectors identifying and suggesting
3 ways that you can strengthen your safety process.

4 Jeff asked me to talk a little bit about the
5 Mexican mine disaster. I was not there; however, Felix
6 Quintana, who is the acting administrator for metal and
7 nonmetal, was there for a week, along with Chuck Campbell,
8 who is a senior ventilation engineer with our technical
9 support group. Who else did we have down there, Jeff?

10 On February 19, at around 2:30 a.m., a methane
11 explosion occurred in an underground coal mine that's
12 located about 85 miles south of Eagle Pass, Texas. They had
13 been mining coal here at this mine for more than 20 years.
14 The depth of cover, I think, was somewhere around 550 or 600
15 feet, as I recall. Eight miners were able to evacuate.
16 Some had burns. Some had some fractures and minor injuries.

17 Seventeen major ground falls were caused by this explosion.

18 On February 22, the Mexican government, through
19 the State Department, contacted and asked if MSHA could
20 possibly provide assistance. They needed some help with
21 establishing the constant gas monitoring and also asked for
22 help, some guidance and some input.

23 As you can see, this area was all mined out, and
24 right in this area they had driven some entries and mined it
25 out, and they hit this fault. When they pulled back out,

1 they did not build any seals in here, and so whatever
2 methane was being generated in this mined-out area was
3 simply coming out in the mine atmosphere, and the red is the
4 return entry, dumping into the return. Right in this area
5 there were two belt tenders. This was a belt transfer
6 point, and the rest of the 64 miners who were unaccounted
7 for were working in these areas right here.

8 Now we're looking at a close-up of this mined-out
9 area and the fault line. When MSHA folks got there a few
10 days after the explosion, they said there were 60-some
11 people working here in a frantic effort to dig through and
12 make passable some of these entries that had caved in. The
13 methane concentrations that our folks found when tests were
14 taken ranged from 6 to 8 percent. They recommended that
15 those people be withdrawn and that activity ceased. That's
16 the decision that was made because of these gas
17 concentrations right in here.

18 The red areas indicate where the major falls
19 occurred that were totally impassable. The yellow areas
20 indicate where the falls occurred that people could get past
21 or over top of. As you can see, there was no possible way
22 in those entries to get past those areas until those falls
23 were cleaned up.

24 What complicated matters, according to Felix, was
25 that most of the ground support in this mine consisted of

1 large timbers supporting steel I beams, and when the
2 explosion occurred, it knocked all of the legs out. The
3 timber legs were blown out, and many ground falls occurred.

4 One of the things that was decided here was that
5 they would drill a hole here and degasify some of this
6 mined-out area, put permanent seals where you see the two
7 black marks, and where you see the green, they would be
8 erecting temporary seals or ventilation curtains. The idea
9 was to block off that gas from migrating in there and to
10 reestablish the fresh air and then to reestablish the
11 ventilation controls that were blown out between the
12 different intake and return.

13 As they progressed toward the location where the
14 two belt tenders were known to be working, they had to clean
15 up all of these falls in order to get entry, and the
16 progress was very, very slow. Because of the political
17 pressure, it was decided that they would not use mechanized
18 means to remove this fallen material, that they would do
19 this all by hand. So at this point in time, it's projected
20 that it may take another nine to 10 months to totally
21 recover those folks that are missing.

22 Okay. This is going to conclude my presentation
23 this morning, and I thank you for your patience.

24 (Applause.)

25 MR. KRAVITZ: Thanks, John.

1 Next is Kobus Zyl from South Africa. I'm glad
2 that you could make it, one of the few South Africans that
3 could. He received a bachelor's in mechanical engineering
4 in 1992. He is a member of the Mine Ventilation Society of
5 South Africa and the South African Institute on Mining and
6 Metallurgy.

7 He joined CSIR in 1994 and is currently research
8 group leader for mine occupational health and safety. The
9 current main focus of the group is silicosis eradication in
10 South Africa, noise-induced hearing loss reduction, and
11 ergonomics in the mining industry.

12 Past experiences include coal mine headings
13 ventilation design for methane and dust control, design
14 model implementation for success, and simulation of
15 ventilation systems and various mining conditions. He is
16 working on a tool for coal mining -- strategies, which we do
17 a lot of here, and I can't say; a system for the detection
18 and control of flammable gases in hard rock underground
19 mines. He is also a manager of the Perbos explosion test
20 facility, and a very interesting project he has headed for a
21 long time, the self-contained self-rescuer testing facility
22 at CSIR. Please welcome Mr. Van Zyl.

23 (Applause.)

24 MR. VAN ZYL: Thank you, Jeff.

25 Good morning, ladies and gentlemen. Thank you for

1 this opportunity to present some studies in South Africa and
2 being part of this workshop. Listening to the previous
3 presenters, it would appear that the issues we have in South
4 Africa are not much different from the issues that have been
5 discussed here today.

6 Basically, my talk will just be an overview as a
7 start-off for a discussion point of how South Africa can
8 actually approach emergency preparedness and then response.

9 In the talk, you'll see that there are three main focus
10 areas in South Africa. Basically, as we said earlier, once
11 you have an incidence of -- atmospheres, i.e., fire or
12 explosion, you need to get the miners to a fresh air
13 situation, which in South Africa is on the ground. Then
14 there's two issues associated with it. How do you get
15 miners to that fresh air situation, and then, thirdly, how
16 do you get them out of it, underground rescue back to the
17 surface?

18 Basically, in the talk, you will see it divided up
19 into these three main areas. Discussing current practices;
20 it's not in detail. It is just an indication of what South
21 African practices are, as practices differ from mining after
22 mining. Research that has been done in the past; you'll see
23 that there hasn't been a significant amount of research,
24 although there is a definite needs. And then also it is not
25 a formal study, but in a discussion with mining owners and

1 workers, what are the critical needs that South Africa feels
2 we need to address in emergency preparedness and escape?
3 And then just a couple of concluding points.

4 Basically, the South African mining industry is
5 regulated by the Mine Health and Safety Act. This act
6 requires that the mine operator has identification and a
7 risk assessment and then develops strategies to mediate the
8 risk. The point I'm trying to make is that fires and
9 explosions are a different risk, the whole process in South
10 Africa is risk based, so it is on the onus of the mine
11 operator to prepare an emergency preparedness and response
12 protocol.

13 In practice, what does it mean? As I alluded to
14 earlier, we need to get miners to fresh air as soon as
15 possible. In South Africa's case, they opted for
16 underground fresh air. This is the case both for hard rock
17 mines and also for our coal mines. It was decided about 20
18 years ago that the establishment of rescue bases as close to
19 the working place as possible will be the best way for South
20 Africans to approach the incidents of fire and explosions.
21 The reason for it, as far as I can establish -- I was not a
22 part of that decision -- was based on the changeover of
23 self-contained self-rescuers. It was felt that it would be
24 safer to don a self-rescuer and get to a fresh air base
25 where from you will be rescued.

1 As I said earlier, this has three issues related
2 to it. First of all, what are the design criteria for an
3 underground fresh air base? Where do you put it? What
4 equipment is required, et cetera?

5 The second issue is how do I get a miner to the
6 fresh air rescue area? As we heard earlier today, exactly
7 the same experience: smoke inundation, low to zero
8 visibility, nonfamiliarity with the section, et cetera, et
9 cetera. We've had various incidents in South Africa where
10 people followed exactly the right procedure, donned their
11 self-rescuers and then tried to reach a rescue base, where
12 in some cases people were found literally four or five
13 pillars away from the rescue base, which would have saved
14 their lives. So this is a very big issue in South Africa:
15 How do we get the guys to the rescue base?

16 And then, thirdly, once these guys actually reach
17 the rescue base, how do you get them out? Fortunately, in
18 South Africa, the mine rescue service has an excellent track
19 record in getting people from underground mines. That's
20 both for hard rock mines and for coal mines. Again, I have
21 to say that the size of South Africa and the location of
22 most of these shafts allow for that rescue brigade to be
23 centralized and actually have a very effective impact.

24 First of all, if you look at underground fresh air
25 basis, what is the current practice? Basically, in hard

1 rock mines it is stated that all miners must be able to
2 reach a rescue bay within 30 minutes. This is based on the
3 prescribed duration of self-contained self-rescuers in South
4 Africa. Just some basic requirements: Again, the
5 Department of Mineral Energy, which is the custodian of the
6 Mine Health and Safety Act, does not prescribe what are the
7 requirements for a rescue base.

8 Again, as mentioned earlier, there is scope to
9 improve exactly what must be in a rescue bay and where it
10 must be positioned. Typically, you will find that there
11 will be compressed air feed in the hard rock mines to supply
12 fresh air. There must be water, communications, and first
13 aid, and the size basically dictates the amount of workers
14 that needs to enter into this rescue bay based on its
15 position within the mine.

16 In coal mines, it's slightly different. Again,
17 based on a 30-minute duration of self-contained self-
18 rescuers, it is generally accepted that the rescue bay will
19 be within 1,400 meters from any given workplace. I didn't
20 put that into feet. I apologize. It was one this morning.

21 There are two types. You get fixed cubbies that
22 are established and also portable units. The idea of the
23 fixed rescue bay is that due to the shallowness of South
24 African -- they will be linked to the surface -- which will
25 supply the necessary communications, water, fresh air, et

1 cetera.

2 In some cases, it has been found that due to the
3 overlying strata depth, occurrences of lakes, et cetera,
4 that these rescue bays could not be reached from the
5 surface. Current practice in South Africa is to use oxygen
6 candles. There is basically a chemical reaction that is
7 started once the miners enter the rescue bay to supply
8 oxygen for at least 24 hours. Again, this is based on the
9 mine rescue service's indication that they will be able to
10 reach any rescue bay from the shaft, given proper access,
11 within 24 hours. Again, portable rescue devices, again,
12 supply a 24-hour duration and mainly using oxygen candles,
13 again, to supply fresh air.

14 Most of these portable rescue chambers are OEM
15 designs, people taking the initiative and supplying a
16 product to the mine where we feel that maybe the mine
17 operator should have a bigger input into exactly what are
18 the requirements of these portable rescue bays.

19 For the rest of this talk, I'm just going to focus
20 on collieries as to currently what is the best practice.
21 Research has been done in the past. As I said earlier, most
22 rescue bay designs and layouts are enough, but even
23 guidelines exist, so there is scope to actually improve the
24 guidelines on what is required in a rescue bay. Related
25 research has been done by the Mine Health and Safety

1 Council, which is a public-funded mechanism whereby mines
2 pay a levy to the Department of Mineral Energy, and they put
3 money available for research. Over the past 10 years, I
4 could identify typically three projects that were
5 specifically based on emergency preparedness and response.

6 Again, as I said, assessment of design of rescue
7 bays in coal mines. What I've been saying earlier is that
8 there is scope to actually increase what is required within
9 a rescue bay. If you read this document, which was
10 published about eight to nine years ago, it is very vague to
11 what should be in a rescue bay and not clearly stating what
12 must be in there in specific terms. We also looked at the
13 feasibility of using radio-assisted location in rescue bays.

14 Again, it was a guidance document. Currently, it is not
15 practiced in South African underground collieries. Also, a
16 manual on base practice for emergency response procedures;
17 again, it's a very generic document, and we've found that in
18 industry, if you look at the different mining -- each mine
19 and mine operator uses its own interpretation of the work
20 done.

21 Potential needs to be identified for underground
22 rescue bays; as I indicated earlier, there are clear
23 guidelines on the maintenance of rescue bays, the location
24 of these rescue bays, again, the issue of sealing. Some of
25 these mine operators are not convinced that the sealing

1 mechanism used on their mines is proper. Again, they comply
2 with the law and say, we have a rescue bay, and it's got
3 air-tight doors. Again, how do we ensure that that is
4 actually the case?

5 Some of the mines using oxygen candles as the main
6 supply; the compressed air line is not favored because it's
7 not used in collieries. There are issues around these
8 oxygen candles catching -- being an exothermic reaction.
9 They have also had incidents of these oxygen candles being
10 stolen by the miners. Again, there's issues that need to be
11 resolved there.

12 The issue of flame-proof or intrinsically safe,
13 portable rescue bays; the DME states that no nonflame-proof
14 and nonintrinsically safe equipment will be used closer than
15 800 meters from any working area in a fiery mine. This
16 prohibits the mines from actually getting these rescue bays
17 as close to the working place as possible, so there are some
18 issues there that need to be resolved.

19 Again, the minimum design criteria for portable
20 rescue bays; these are product driven instead of being
21 driven by the requirements of the mining operators, and a
22 significant issue is once we've entered the rescue bay, it's
23 been sealed, and we've activated the oxygen candles, how do
24 we get a miner that was not there when the team entered the
25 portable rescue bay? There is a knock on the door. What do

1 you do? You've got a limited amount of oxygen candles. Do
2 you open the door? Then you most likely will significantly
3 reduce the duration of your life support. So these are some
4 of the needs that we feel that we need to start looking at.

5 Current practice around getting mines to rescue
6 bays; I've divided this into two areas. In South Africa, we
7 have what are called the "section waiting places." The
8 reason for that is that from your section waiting place
9 there are different guidance systems to get to the rescue
10 bay. To get to these guidance systems or potential caches
11 of oxygen-giving devices, all South African underground
12 collieries are issued 30-minute-duration, self-contained
13 self-rescuers.

14 What is unique, or what came to the fore through
15 research, is that each miner is issued his dedicated self-
16 contained self-rescuer. In the past, due to the shifts,
17 three miners located a self-contained self-rescuer. During
18 our testing, it was found that this practice reduces the
19 durability and the life-saving potential of the self-
20 contained self-rescuers.

21 This brings me to the next point. It was
22 identified in the middle nineties that we need to be sure
23 that self-contained self-rescuers will provide a 30-minute
24 life-saving ability because all of our escape and rescue
25 strategies were based on this. The DME then instructed that

1 an annual testing program would be launched. CSIR was the
2 custodian of this. It basically consists of a self-
3 contained self-rescuer being tested on a mechanical lung,
4 prescribed breathing rates. One percent of all self-
5 contained self-rescuers deployed in South Africa currently
6 go through this testing annually.

7 The success of the program has been significant,
8 in that issues identified with refurbished units, issues
9 identified with the composition of the chemical base
10 polarization, et cetera, has been picked up through the
11 program and has been addressed at the OEM level. So in
12 South Africa, we are pretty convinced that if you are issued
13 a self-contained self-rescuer, the likelihood of having a
14 30-minute life duration is very, very good.

15 Just touching on the test criteria for the self-
16 contained self-rescuer, it's both on oxygen supply, CO₂
17 scrubbing and also on breathing resistance. The committee
18 consists of a tripartite technical committee that oversees
19 the testing and sets guidelines. The tripartite is the
20 state, original equipment manufacturers, and labor. The
21 committee provides, as I said earlier, technical guidance on
22 issues that have been discovered. How long can one use a
23 self-contained self-rescuer? Five years? Ten years? This
24 program is busy answering these questions.

25 The current practice to get from the section

1 waiting place to the rescue bay; two types of systems, the
2 guiding rope system and audio systems, have been used in
3 South Africa. The guidance rope is typically used all over
4 the world with a cone and is currently the favored system.

5 A Moses system was used by one of the mining
6 houses where an audio beep was sounded from the section
7 waiting place to the rescue bay sequentially so you would
8 follow the sound. Although the concept did work very well,
9 the maintenance of the system proved to be too expensive and
10 too cumbersome, and it couldn't be guaranteed that the
11 system would actually survive an explosion or be functional
12 in an explosion situation, so currently that system is not
13 being used anymore.

14 Rescue bays are marked, both audio, visually, and
15 physically. Audio, there is a siren that is fitted outside
16 the door so if you get in the vicinity, you should be able
17 to reach the rescue bay. Visually, reflective -- they have
18 got strobe lights, et cetera. Also what they do is they
19 hang a conveyor belt in the road. If you actually walk past
20 the rescue bays in very low visibility, you will actually
21 hit this, and hopefully you will know that the rescue bay is
22 there.

23 Maybe just a comment is that it has been found, as
24 I said earlier, that people actually did miss rescue bays.
25 They were in the vicinity but could not locate it. Again,

1 we need to relook at these systems that have been put in
2 place specifically from a durability point of view. Some of
3 the mines, being concerned with this, have a cache of long-
4 duration units, 60 minutes plus, both chemically and
5 compressed air, oxygen, that would ensure that people would
6 be able to reach a second rescue bay in excess of two
7 kilometers to try to alleviate this issue of looking for the
8 rescue bay.

9 Research was done, again, by the Mine Health and
10 Safety Council into the use of ultra-low-frequency
11 communication to be able to communicate with miners after an
12 incident. Again, this work was done six or seven years ago,
13 but we've also looked at in Australia, and I see that it is
14 also in the States, the PED system that needs to be
15 investigated because communication, early warning, is one of
16 the critical factors, we believe.

17 Also work that was done is how do you overcome the
18 disorientation and visibility after an explosion?
19 Basically, this research said that no matter how well you
20 know your situation, if you're disoriented, and you're in
21 zero visibility, you're going to have a problem to get out
22 of the section on your own. In this case study, a miner
23 that had been working in the section for 30 years was asked,
24 and he said, I will get to my rescue bay within 10 minutes.
25 They blindfolded him. It took him an hour and 40 minutes

1 and a couple of bruises to actually find the rescue bay.

2 Need. In discussions with mining houses, this is
3 the most critical area we feel that we need to start
4 focusing our attention on. The biggest concern is that
5 although most of the regulations require that quarterly
6 escape drills be held, it was found unofficially that in
7 excess of 50 percent, if not higher, of the people in the
8 section when they are just blindfolded, when they are not
9 subjected to the stresses, to the -- environment, if they
10 are just blindfolded and say, please get to the rescue bay,
11 only about 30 to 20 percent of these people will actually
12 make it. Again, this is unofficial information by just
13 talking to miners, and this is also a very, very big concern
14 as to how do we ensure people get to the rescue bays.

15 Again, early warning systems, as we heard earlier
16 today; the quicker you know there is a situation, the better
17 your chances of survival. Again, when do we don our self-
18 contained self-rescuers? Some of the mines do use the
19 stench gas or aromatic gases. When it enters the air
20 stream, once a guy smells this, there is no question. Don
21 your self-rescue and go to your waiting place before the
22 situation gets out of hand. There are some mines that
23 employ from the surface where they actually stop the belt.
24 On inquiry, the miner will find out there is an issue. We
25 need to get out. Again, there is a 10-to-15-minute mine

1 delay. There are mine communication systems -- the EWAC
2 system is used by one of the mining houses. A very good
3 system, but what is the human response once an emergency is
4 declared?

5 Nonvisual against visual guidance; are we going to
6 go for a system on audio, or are we going to use just the
7 guide rope? Are we going to try to get a person a pair of
8 goggles? Some of the mines are talking about getting
9 infrared equipment. I don't know how feasible that is.
10 But, again, human response: If you can't see anything, you
11 start to panic. So these issues need to be resolved or
12 looked at more carefully.

13 Again, we've heard today preparedness training.
14 In discussions with teams that were evacuated or safely made
15 it to rescue bays under emergency conditions, you will find
16 that in the majority of cases an experienced brigadesman was
17 part of their team, so there was no panic. It was exactly
18 the same sort of training that was discussed earlier this
19 morning by Mike.

20 Some of minuses. We need to incorporate a goggle
21 within the self-rescuer unit that's belt worn. The question
22 is, will it actually make a difference? Again, we need to
23 look at the human response factor. If I can at least open
24 my eyes, if it's not burning, even if I can't see anything,
25 my psychological state might be much more relaxed.

1 Needs: To get from the section waiting place to
2 the rescue bay, effective systems. Do we need to engage
3 more than one system, and if so, how, and which ones do we
4 focus on? Again, looking at the reliability of systems not
5 only after a fire and explosion but also general maintenance
6 that was also raised today.

7 Current practice of the mine rescue services; I'm
8 not going to elaborate too much on it. The bottom line is
9 the mine rescue services work very, very well in South
10 Africa. Again, because of -- South Africa, the location of
11 the mines. The system is volunteer based, and it's region
12 and countrywide. It's an independent organization that
13 establishes its own training criteria. It also is contacted
14 in the case of emergency and responds professionally by
15 calling on the brigades within that area. So the
16 coordination is done by the Miners Consulting Service, mine
17 rescue service itself, by calling on volunteer brigadesmen.
18 These brigadesmen undergo a rigorous annual assessment, and
19 at the age of 42, you're not allowed to be a brigadesman
20 anymore. As I said, a very good track record.

21 Again, it's a system of continued improvement.
22 The current focus is on human physiological response,
23 specifically, working in heat environments. We're trying to
24 get systems in place where they can monitor their own
25 workplace. You don't want a brigadesman to go in and

1 overexert himself and in the process get himself in trouble.

2 Also, working in teams in low visibility areas is
3 emphasized significantly.

4 I call these challenges more than needs. MRS;
5 they are basically just advancing the current system. They
6 are currently looking at the equipment they use, especially
7 the oxygen supply units, the physiological response,
8 communications, et cetera, et cetera. They are trying to
9 incorporate all of the new technologies into being a more
10 effective unit.

11 The biggest concern is the declining numbers of
12 brigadesmen. People do not want to volunteer to become
13 brigadesmen anymore.

14 In conclusion, the biggest issue, in discussions
15 with the mining industry, is how do we get people when they
16 are working in the section to the section waiting place to
17 the underground rescue bays. I think this is the biggest
18 challenge that we face in South Africa, and one of the
19 critical things we started looking at is what is the current
20 technology, base technology, available, but also how do
21 humans respond to an emergency situation? In the past, a
22 lot of technology has been used, but what would you or I do
23 if faced with that situation?

24 Clear guidelines on basic practice need to be
25 established, especially for rescue bases. Also, early

1 warning systems need to be looked at critically, and
2 evaluation of basic practices after an incident. When we
3 have incidents in South Africa, if it is a success story,
4 yes, we got them out, newspaper headlines, but there is no
5 formal way of going back and establishing why we were
6 successful or why weren't we successful.

7 I think that's also an area we need to start
8 looking at. Near misses are not recorded. The successful
9 use of self-contained self-rescuers is not widely reported.
10 There is no official system in place. When self-contained
11 self-rescues are done, was it necessary, was it not
12 necessary, and what were the surrounding circumstances? So
13 it's important to have a formal system in place to learn
14 from this.

15 That's my presentation for this morning. Thank
16 you, ladies and gentlemen.

17 (Applause.)

18 MR. KRAVITZ: Well, we set out for our first panel
19 to set a research agenda to set the tone for this workshop,
20 and I think they have accomplished that.

21 Mike started out talking about leadership skills,
22 group theory, group work, evacuation through smoke,
23 different types of training.

24 Mike Kalich and John Radomsky related several
25 examples of mine evacuations and mine emergencies in coal

1 and metal/nonmetal.

2 Kobus, I think you did an excellent job stating
3 the training needs and the research needs that are going to
4 be discussed further in this workshop.

5 So I think we're off to a good start. Please
6 return promptly at ten-fifteen for the second panel session.

7 Thank you.

8 (Whereupon, a short recess was taken.)

9 MR. GURTUNCA: Good morning, ladies and gentlemen.
10 Welcome to the second session of the morning. The second
11 session is about escape technologies. We have five
12 speakers. The first presentation will be given by Dr.
13 Jeffery Kravitz, MSHA, and Mr. John Kovac, NIOSH. Their
14 presentation is about self-rescue devices.

15 Dr. Jeffery Kravitz is the chief, mine emergency
16 operations and special projects for MSHA technical support.
17 He is responsible for coordination and supervision of the
18 MSHA mine emergency operations program. This includes
19 operation and maintenance of MSHA's mine emergency
20 operations equipment and resources. He is also the manager
21 of MSHA's mine emergency unit.

22 Dr. Kravitz is responsible for all MSHA respirator
23 approvals as part of the joint NIOSH-MSHA approval program
24 for all emergency breathing devices used in mining. He is
25 also responsible for the MSHA portion of NIOSH-MSHA

1 investigations of problems involving self-contained
2 breathing devices and filter rescue devices.

3 Mr. John Kovac is acting program manager for
4 mining and construction at the National Personal Protective
5 Technology Laboratory. For nearly 25 years, he has been
6 responsible for research and development of SCSRs.

7 MR. KOVAC: Good morning. Both Jeff and I will be
8 giving this presentation mostly because the relationship
9 that earlier the Bureau of Mines and later NIOSH and NPPTL
10 has had with MSHA has been a very long-lived one, and it's
11 been a productive and constructive relationship.

12 Secondly, I look out, and I see a lot of old
13 friends, and I will remark, we have been through a lot
14 together, but much work remains to be done. With that in
15 mind, I'll begin.

16 In the aftermath of a mine disaster, miners are
17 taught to don their self-contained self-rescuers and make an
18 escape from the mine. So what we're going to talk about
19 today is some history of these devices, the long-term field
20 evaluation, the kinds of training that's been developed,
21 ongoing investigations of SCSRs recovered from Sago and
22 Alma, and future actions that we will take in order to
23 advance the technology.

24 In terms of history, prior to 1981, miners relied
25 on filter self-rescuers. In 1981, the first generation of

1 self-contained self-rescuers were deployed underground.
2 Those devices, because of their mining application, have a
3 joint MSHA-NIOSH approval, MSHA acting under the authority
4 of 30 C.F.R. • 7517.14 and NIOSH under the authority of 42
5 C.F.R. • 84. Because of questions regarding the longevity
6 of these devices, their reliability in a mine environment
7 after long deployment, in 1983, both agencies began a long-
8 term field evaluation which amounted to collecting about 50
9 self-contained self-rescuers on a yearly basis from
10 underground coal mines around the country, testing these
11 devices on a breathing metabolic simulator, and seeing how
12 well they would hold up.

13 Because of the size of the devices, and what the
14 photograph illustrates, we have a first-generation, FSR, and
15 the second generation, the government underwrote the
16 development of smaller, lighter-weight units which could,
17 indeed, be worn, and that happened in 1989. By the year
18 2000, SCSR reliability, because of the size of the
19 deployment -- there are roughly 50,000 units deployed out
20 there -- MSHA begins looking at durability of the units, and
21 the long-term field evaluation expands from 50 units a year
22 to nearly 200 units a year, and we include 100 FSRs also.

23 And, lastly, in 2005, the National Technology
24 Transfer Center at Wheeling Jesuit University, in
25 conjunction with NIOSH and MSHA, sponsored an SCSR workshop.

1 Meetings were held twice in 2005 to identify technological
2 options for future advancement.

3 The units that we have today -- the Ocenco EPA
4 6.5, a first-generation SCSR; the Draeger Oxy K Plus, second
5 generation; CSCSR-100, second generation; the Ocenco M-20, a
6 10-minute device; the MSA Lifesaver 60, 60-minute-duration
7 apparatus -- the MSA Lifesaver is no longer being produced,
8 so the deployment in the industry today consists of the
9 three, one-hour-rated devices -- the Ocenco, Draeger, CSC --
10 and some mines choose to deploy, in addition to one-hour
11 units, cached underground, the M-20s, a 10-minute SCSR.

12 What the devices look like as deployed as they are
13 about to be used; they all share common features. There
14 will be a breathing hose with a mouthpiece, nose clips so
15 that your lungs essentially isolated and depend only on the
16 breathing gas mix being produced by the apparatus, goggles
17 to wear a breathing bag, and oxygen storage. There are two
18 kinds of SCSRs, and they differ in the way that oxygen is
19 stored and released. They are chemical-oxygen units. Some
20 people understand these as "chem-ox units," and they depend
21 on a solid chemical, potassium superoxide. Potassium
22 superoxide stores oxygen and releases it in a chemical
23 reaction that depends upon the water vapor and XL carbon
24 dioxide in your breath.

25 On the other hand, we have compressed oxygen

1 devices, and their oxygen is stored as a gas under high
2 pressure. There is a separate CO₂ scrubber, and that
3 material is lithium hydroxide, a solid chemical.

4 A number of lessons have been learned over the 25-
5 year history of SCSR deployment. Let me begin, first:
6 Escape is the primary survival strategy. An escape means
7 taking the miner, on foot and under apparatus, from the
8 deepest point of penetration in the mine to safety. In some
9 cases, more than one SCSR provider is needed for escape, but
10 a one-hour SCSR does not mean one hour for every miner under
11 every circumstance.

12 The actual duration of the units depends upon the
13 miner, body weight, his age, physical fitness, the
14 difficulty of the escape, how far the escape is, other
15 escapeway factors in terms of broken terrain, whether he has
16 to walk upright or has to crawl, and, lastly, but not of
17 least importance, the miner's confidence in his ability to
18 make that escape under apparatus.

19 A miner's confidence depends on three factors:
20 quality, the fact that the units at the point of manufacture
21 will perform as stipulated; reliability, that his unit will
22 work when called upon; training, that a miner knows how to
23 inspect and maintain the unit in his possession, and just as
24 important, that a miner has expectations training, what to
25 expect while wearing the unit, how it's going to provide him

1 effective life support.

2 We know that sometimes escape is impossible, and
3 miners, as a last resort, must emergency shelter and wait
4 for rescue.

5 None of the SCSR deployment over the last 25 years
6 would have been possible without partnership from our
7 various stakeholders. We work closely with these
8 individuals, with these groups. There has often been
9 controversy, but reasonable people can always resolve these
10 debates in a reasonable fashion. Without their support,
11 though, this wouldn't have been possible, and they include
12 BCOA, the NMA, Mineworkers, Steelworkers, all of the SCSR
13 manufacturers, and, lastly, again, but not least, MSHA being
14 the co-approver in this activity.

15 So where we stand is this: If there is any
16 objective in deploying SCSRs in this country or, for that
17 matter, any country around this planet, no miner should be
18 forced to rely upon an SCSR that might be unsafe for an
19 escape. Just as important, a miner must have confidence
20 that his SCSR will work in an emergency and have the hands-
21 on knowledge of how to use it. Escape means taking a miner
22 on foot and under oxygen from the workplace to a point of
23 safety.

24 Jeff now will speak on the long-term field
25 evaluation and the ongoing investigation of units recovered

1 from Sago and Alma. Jeff?

2 MR. KRAVITZ: Thanks, John. I'll put on a
3 different hat here and be a speaker for a while. I
4 volunteered to take the lesser of the parts here.

5 The protocol for the long-term field evaluation,
6 which was started in the early 1980s -- 1981 when SCSRs were
7 first put into mines -- we definitely wanted to track the
8 reliability and the quality of the SCSRs, as John mentioned.

9 We started doing this with the first-generation units and
10 have continued that ever since. That program is about a 25-
11 year-old program.

12 Basically, we sample units from all of the
13 districts. Coal Mine Safety and Health Districts all
14 cooperate with us to help select the mines. We replace the
15 SCSRs using NIOSH funds for replacement units and make sure
16 that all of the units that are collected pass inspection.
17 Basically, it's the manufacturer's inspection. At first,
18 people were getting the idea that they could get rid of
19 their really beat-up SCSRs, and the first batches we used to
20 get in and brand-new ones in return. That's not what we
21 wanted. We wanted something that actually passed the visual
22 inspection.

23 So we worked that out now, and we have someone who
24 is very well trained to inspect all of the units to make
25 sure that we get good units for the field, although

1 sometimes things do slip through the cracks. Then we end up
2 going to the lab and cleaning units up, and we find that
3 really shouldn't have collected that unit in the first
4 place, which is a finding in and of itself.

5 We measure the life-support capability using NIOSH
6 simulator and man test to compare them to new SCSRs, and
7 reports are published after that.

8 Basically, the collection is such that we try to
9 collect from the majority of SCSRs in the field. According
10 to the market share, CSE has a slight advantage. Sometimes
11 we get more CSEs than anything else. In 2004 and 2005, we
12 had 92 CSEs, 22 Draegers collected, 20 MSAs, 49 Ocenco, and
13 15 M20s, which are very hard to get if you have M20s in your
14 mine. We have a very hard time getting them because one of
15 the problems is it's hard to get replacement units for them,
16 from the government's standpoint.

17 This is what the testing looks like. Basically,
18 we have the metabolic simulator. NIOSH basically has
19 refined that over the years. The device has shown good
20 reliability, and NIOSH is now looking at incorporating that
21 into new testing standards. Maybe John will say something
22 about that later.

23 Also, we have your man test. A few units are
24 tested on the man testing to basically utilize the devices
25 on live people. People from our mine emergency unit, when

1 they sign on, they also sign on to be volunteers for this
2 type of work, and they have cooperated very well, although
3 over the last couple of years, we've been so busy responding
4 to mine emergencies, we have not been able to do as much as
5 we would like to do.

6 Examples of the SCSRs we have actually seen in the
7 field have sometimes come as a result of different
8 investigations that we actually have seen. Basically, a
9 hose was torn. We have a unit here, an Ocenco, that was
10 collected. In the early stages, it actually had a seal that
11 was split. Lifesaver 60; we found some KO2 in the breathing
12 bag. It turned out to have faulty filtering material.

13 The EBA 6.5; we would find these with slight
14 cracks and sometimes with big dents in the lithium-hydroxide
15 canisters here. Those obviously should have been removed
16 from service, but they weren't. And the M20; obviously,
17 this one here has quite a few cracks. That was before we
18 instituted the program to only collect units that actually
19 pass inspection. We've improved that considerably.

20 There have also been some problems since '92.
21 Basically, quality control was about 44 percent, and I'm
22 happy to say that, based on our efforts and our increase in
23 audits at our SCSR manufacturing plants -- we were doing
24 them not on an annual basis -- we started doing it on an
25 annual basis, and that has improved tremendously as far as

1 what we're seeing that the manufacturers are doing. I think
2 that the relationship between the manufacturers and the
3 government has also improved somewhat because of our close
4 relationship with respect to finding problems before they
5 actually become big problems.

6 Reliability was a problem 38 percent of the time,
7 and that's improved quite a bit. Training had also been a
8 major problem. We have units as far back as Wilburke, where
9 training was a major issue, and I think we're still seeing
10 some training issues. With Willow Creek, we saw training
11 issues that were related. When I went out there to do some
12 interviews with miners who had actually utilized their
13 SCSRs, we found instances in other places where they have
14 actually had problems with training. Again, training
15 is a major type of a topic that we're all interested in in
16 this conference.

17 We started some new training types of modules.
18 Basically, we want to distribute and evaluate new training
19 which will ensure that the mine knows how to inspect his
20 SCSR and how to use it in the event of an emergency. These
21 modules are the direct result of an interagency agreement
22 between MSHA and NIOSH. We have all of the units that John
23 pointed out involved in these training modules. We've just
24 about finished all but the MSA. The Draeger module should
25 be up shortly. It's going through final review. We started

1 out with CSE and Ocenco because they have the majority of
2 the market and then we went to the Draeger and then the MSA,
3 we saved for last because it has the smallest portion of the
4 market.

5 Each module consists of a brand-new training
6 video. The video goes through all of the donning sequences.

7 It gives some expectations. David Dye was talking about
8 expectations training. We try to get that in as much as
9 possible. That was an issue that was identified quite a
10 while ago, and I still think that we have a ways to go with
11 expectations training.

12 Some of the new things: We're going to have to
13 now come up with a revision to all of those videos because
14 of the need of the extra SCSRs in the field, different
15 caches that are out in different types of mines. We're
16 going to have to develop standard procedures for actually
17 donning an SCSR when you're actually wearing an SCSR or
18 transferring from one SCSR to the next. It can be a major
19 issue.

20 Mike Brnich is working on that with Charlie Voigt.
21 I was talking with Mike today, and Mike says that they are
22 getting close to a solution to that. As soon as they do,
23 we'll do different types of field testing with that, make sure it
24 works, and then we'll incorporate it into our new training videos
25 and then into our computer-based training modules.

1 Computer-based training modules are on the MSHA
2 Web site under "interactive training," and I encourage you
3 all to visit that site. We also distribute the videos and
4 all of the CBT, computer-based training, from our academy.
5 Each CBT has an instructor's guide on it. It has various
6 scenarios from the videos on them, too, and I think we're
7 doing quite a bit of good work with those modules.

8 I've also been talking with Jeff Duncan. Jeff has
9 an idea of incorporating that into professional mine
10 certification, so when the next revision comes out, we'll be
11 able to printout of the certificate. We'll actually have
12 people who have trained on that type of CBT have a
13 certificate that shows that goes towards the professional
14 monitoring. So that might encourage people to participate
15 in this type of training, as well as the traditional
16 training that's required by our regulations.

17 Also, we have screen savers and stickers for those
18 who are interested in computer toys like that.

19 MSHA distributes these to the different mines, and
20 as I mentioned, the certification for the professional
21 miner, I think, will add quite a new facet to this.

22 Accomplishments: So far, as I mentioned, CSE is
23 completed, Ocenco is completed, Draeger is almost completed,
24 and the MSA is getting close to being completed. The video
25 is just in the final revision, and the CBT is about 75

1 percent.

2 As John mentioned, we were tasked by the
3 investigation team at Sago to basically take a look at all
4 of the SCSRs that were utilized. We have formed a team. We
5 have established a protocol, and to do that, we have looked
6 at all of the SCSRs already. Those who are interested have
7 been invited to all of the different types of testing we've
8 done with the Sago SCSRs, and we're at the point now where
9 we're almost prepared to write up our report. That will be
10 incorporated into the accident investigation report from the
11 Sago.

12 The protocol consisted of a visual inspection
13 assessing the breathing condition. All but one of the SCSRs
14 was actually used. The one that was used was put on a
15 breathing metabolic simulator, and that did go for one hour.

16 At least, I can tell you that.

17 Life support was assessed using the simulator for
18 that one unit, plus we opened up each unit, looked at the
19 chemical bags, and tried to gauge how much oxygen was
20 actually used from the chemicals inside that particular
21 SCSR. And as I mentioned, we will be doing a report for
22 that. John, the future.

23 MR. KOVAC: Can the situation be improved? Can
24 SCSRs be improved? The answer is yes. It's not a matter so
25 much of technology but the will to pursue that improvement.

1 We would like to see the units be made more
2 rugged, reliable, be tested on the simulator, have ways of
3 self-reporting to make inspections simpler and more direct.

4 We would also like to see some sort of registration so we
5 know where the units are deployed at throughout the mining
6 industry in the event of a recall or some other corrective
7 action. Rather than go into a crisis mode, we would simply
8 react by dealing with those units which were damaged and
9 seeing that they were replaced in good order.

10 We could simplify things. We believe that
11 manufacturers, by just stipulating performance requirements,
12 things would work better, users will have the best SCSRs
13 available, and the government will have the means for
14 effective and early discovery problems.

15 Meetings were held with our stakeholders at the
16 National Technology Transfer Center under their auspices in
17 June and December of last year, and two concepts were
18 evolved. One was that of a hybrid self-rescuer. That would
19 be a combination of a closed circuit device which either
20 transforms or switches over to an air-purified respirator,
21 the idea there being that sometimes in the aftermath of a
22 disaster, the atmosphere inside the mine has sufficient
23 oxygen for life support but needs to be scrubbed of carbon
24 monoxide or other byproducts of combustion. Prototypes of
25 the unit were, in fact, discussed. Some bench work, in

1 terms of experimental design, has been done.

2 The other concept that was evolved was for a
3 dockable or piggyback SCSR/DSCSR, and here, because of the
4 requirement for deploying multiple units along escapeways,
5 the idea would be, rather than making a transfer from one
6 unit to another, in effect, removing the mouthpiece from the
7 one that the mine is wearing, they will go over to a
8 completely new unit. You would simply swap out life support
9 capacity in an orderly fashion, keeping the respiratory
10 system, the way that you're breathing, isolated from the
11 mine air.

12 I need to remark that type of unit is already
13 allowed under the current regulations, which permit a
14 deployment of a so-called "1060 SCSR."

15 My intention is to pursue these, working in
16 partnership with any or all of the manufacturers that would
17 step forward with the appropriate prototype technology to
18 see it forward for development.

19 And that, I think, is all that we have to say on
20 all of this, so if there's any questions.

21 MR. KRAVITZ: We're going to be doing questions at
22 the end, so if you have any questions, we'll be circulating
23 the cards, and then at the end of the day, we'll be having a
24 whole panel devoted to questions. If you guys can start --
25 index cards, write down your questions.

1 (Applause.)

2 MR. GURTUNCA: Thank you. In the second part of
3 the session, the presentations will be about life lines and
4 escapeways. We have two speakers, Dr. Charles Lazzara and
5 Ken Sproul.

6 The first presentation will be given by Dr.
7 Lazzara. He is a physical scientist with the Disaster
8 Prevention and Response Branch, Pittsburgh Research
9 Laboratory, NIOSH. He received a Ph.D. degree in physical
10 chemistry from the University of Chicago and was a post-
11 doctoral fellow at the Institute of Gas Technology in the
12 area of combustion kinetics. He joined the Bureau of Mines,
13 now NIOSH, in 1971 and has been involved in fire and
14 emergency response research since 1979. He currently leads
15 a team investigating procedures and technologies to enhance
16 the safety and operational effectiveness of mine emergency
17 responders, including rescue teams, fire brigades, and
18 evacuating mines. Charles.

19 MR. LAZZARA: Thank you. I would like to
20 highlight today some of the research work being conducted by
21 NIOSH under its Emergency Response and Rescue Program. The
22 goal of this program is to enhance the safety and
23 effectiveness of mine emergency responders. Now, when we
24 classify emergency responders, we're looking at our first
25 responders, which are the miners themselves. The

1 underground miners will most likely be the first affected or
2 discover an emergency, and they are going to have to make
3 some key decisions, such as communicating that information
4 to others and whether they can deal with that emergency
5 themselves with the resources they have in hand, for
6 example, fighting a small fire with a hand-held portable
7 fire extinguisher, or whether they need to evacuate.

8 We look at the second responders to be fire
9 brigades. Several mines do have fire brigade members
10 available, and they have special training in the use of
11 breathing apparatuses and also advanced fire-fighting skills
12 and equipment. So while other miners might be evacuating a
13 mine in a fire, these teams or brigades would organize, get
14 their equipment, go towards the fire site to try to get that
15 fire in its early stages. They may use hand-held
16 extinguishers, water lines, high-expansion foam generators,
17 et cetera, to try to put out that fire.

18 In terms of sustained responders, we rely on our
19 mine rescue teams. They have the capability, of course, of
20 being under air for longer periods of time, and they have
21 extensive training in mine exploration, mapping, rescuing,
22 and also in fire fighting, too, if there need be.

23 I would like to focus now, at least, on some of
24 our research objectives for those first responders. We have
25 conducted and evaluated smoke evacuation exercises at

1 operating mines, and this is to enhance the evacuation
2 preparedness of the miners and mine management and safety
3 officials, as well as improve the competence level of miners
4 who might have to evacuate through smoke-filled entries. We
5 are also developing, identifying, and evaluating technology
6 to assist evacuating miners in smoke-filled entries, and, of
7 course, this can improve their chances of a safe evacuation.

8 In terms of the smoke evacuation exercises, we do
9 this in partnership, of course, with operating mines, and,
10 in general, we'll have a group of 20 to 30 miners which
11 we'll gather together and brief them on what they are about
12 to experience. We'll show them some of the technology we
13 would like them to evaluate during that particular exercise,
14 and then we'll send them through several hundred feet of
15 mine entry where the smoke visibility ranges from about five
16 to 10 feet, and in that first section we'll just have their
17 normal mine escapeway markers that they have in their mine,
18 which are generally reflective materials or signs.

19 Then we'll give them some additional technology,
20 and we'll send them through an area of around 700 to 1,000
21 feet long where the visibility ranges from one to three
22 feet, and they get experience of how they can maneuver and
23 manage to travel through a really dense, smoke-filled entry.

24 Now, this is a white theatrical smoke, nontoxic,
25 of course, and in an actual situation the smoke, of course,

1 would be very black due to a burning conveyor belt, coal,
2 diesel fuel, tires, and that kind of thing, and also they
3 would be wearing their self-contained self-rescuers in
4 addition. In some of these exercises in some mines, we
5 generally have at least one individual in the group that
6 would don an SCSR and travel through the smoke so he could
7 relate his experiences to the other miners that are involved
8 in the exercise.

9 Since 2000, over 1,900 mine workers have
10 participated in smoke evacuation exercises at nine mines.
11 As one positive output of this work, one major mining
12 company has recently purchased a number of smoke-generating
13 machines so they can conduct these exercises with their
14 miners on a regular basis.

15 The type of technology we evaluated included
16 directional life lines. The one we used is shown here at
17 the bottom for our work. Essentially, it's a quarter-inch,
18 yellow, polypropylene rope. It is flame retardant. It does
19 pass the modified motor vehicle safety standard 302 test.
20 It has about a 900-pound breaking strength. We have on it
21 these plastic directional cones, and these are the guides
22 that make it directional.

23 Now, there has been some confusion out there about
24 how they should be installed. The tips of the cones do not
25 point the way out. The line is designed so that once you

1 grab onto it, your hand glides over the cone, so you don't
2 have to remove your hand from the life line as you make your
3 way out. If you happen to be going in the wrong direction,
4 which has occurred, your hand would be blocked by the cone,
5 so you need to turn around and go the other way.

6 More recently, they have put out another type of
7 life line which is replacing this rope with essentially an
8 airline cable, and this is a steel cable which is covered
9 with plastic. Along the life line, at 25-foot intervals or
10 so, they also have reflective tape. These cones can be
11 positioned at various distances. Generally, in our work,
12 they are positioned at 100 feet along the life line, and we
13 found it valuable that if you're approaching an obstacle,
14 such as a man door, or, let's say, making a right-hand turn,
15 you may want to put a couple of these cones close together,
16 within three or four feet of each other, to make people
17 aware that they are approaching an obstacle.

18 This is some of the other technology that was
19 evaluated during these exercises: various types of
20 reflective objects and materials, different colors; chemical
21 light sticks of various colors; strobe lights -- that's a
22 xenon type of strobe light and light-emitting diode type of
23 strobe lights; and these hand-held lasers like the one I'm
24 using here. This is a Class 3A laser, five milliwatts.
25 Well, 532 nanometers is the wavelength. You can see you can

1 go a long distance with this, several hundred meters. We've
2 found this very useful in terms of cutting through the
3 smoke, and when you hit a rib or an obstacle in front of
4 you, you'll see the point. You almost would use it like a
5 light walking stick.

6 Here you see one of the participants exiting the
7 smoke-filled entry, and he has the aid of a life line, which
8 he has one hand on, and you see the laser beam cutting
9 through the smoke. He is also wearing a reflective vest.

10 So what do we learn from some of these exercises?

11 What I have here is data we got from one exercise in a
12 western coal mine where there were 219 participants or
13 miners that went through this exercise with these various
14 technologies. These are some of the questionnaires we give
15 them in evaluating the exercise. This is the number of
16 miners who responded that they strongly agreed to that
17 statement, the ones that agreed, disagreed, or strongly
18 disagreed. You always get one or two of these guys. I
19 think he misunderstood the numbering system.

20 I learned something new from this exercise. You
21 see the vast majority of the 219 agreed to that. Some of
22 these, of course, were experienced miners that have been in
23 the mine a long time. Others were brand-new miners that
24 were just there for less than a year and have never
25 experienced anything like this before.

1 After this exercise, I feel better prepared to
2 travel through smoke. The vast majority, again, agreed to
3 that statement.

4 Here we get into the evaluation of the technology
5 and what they thought about it. The directional life line
6 was useful for escape in smoking entries. You can see,
7 based on the number of agreements, that this was the best
8 advice in terms of getting them through a smoking entry
9 where visibility was limited to one to three feet.

10 The laser was helpful for escape in smoking
11 entries. Once again, we got a pretty positive result on
12 that, and we found, of course, this green laser was superior
13 over, let's say, a red laser in terms of color.

14 The strobe lights were useful in smoking entries.
15 Once again, a fairly positive response in aiding them to
16 get through a smoke-filled environment or leading the way
17 through the smoke-filled entry.

18 Then we started going down in terms of popularity.
19 Chemical light sticks; a fairly good response, but a number
20 of disagrees. And then reflecting material; that generally
21 ended up at the end of the list.

22 Some of the comments we received from these
23 exercises: "Good exercise on what smoke-filled entries
24 would be like." "A very helpful exercise." It was
25 surprising that we had a number of those, and the fact that

1 they should have had this exercise a long time ago in terms
2 of walking through their escapeways because generally when
3 they walk through their escapeways now, it's in clear air.
4 "Green was the more visible of all of the devices." "The
5 escape rope was the most useful." "The lasers helped the
6 most to find the ribs. I don't think that the life line
7 would last long, but it definitely helps a lot."

8 Travel time slows considerably a smoke, a good
9 fact to consider when assigning -- space SCSRs. At least
10 one mine we went to took that into account in terms of where
11 they had their caches of SCSRs placed along their escapeway
12 and realized the fact that if you did have to travel through
13 a contaminated escapeway, you would have to put those caches
14 a lot closer than they are now.

15 And we get some good ideas, too, from the miners,
16 like placing strobe lights on the escape rope for better
17 effectiveness in actual situations.

18 We are starting to look into the possibility of
19 lighted life lines based on a couple of different
20 technologies, such as electric chemaluscant wire. So you
21 can picture that as a life line put inside a rope, for
22 example, that could be lit during evacuation either by
23 somebody evacuating or by a signal from the surface or
24 various other types of LEDs or even bulbs encased in
25 plastic.

1 In conclusion, the underground smoke evacuation
2 exercises better prepared miners for escape through smoke-
3 contaminated entries. Directional life lines were selected
4 by miners as the optimum escapeway aid, and laser pointers
5 and strobe lights were also found to be very beneficial.

6 We have an interesting report that we put out just
7 recently the summarizes this work, as well as the work that
8 we do with mine rescue teams and fire brigades also. That
9 can be found at our NIOSH Web site, or if anybody would like
10 to be sent a copy, just give me their card, et cetera.
11 Thank you.

12 (Applause.)

13 MR. GURTUNCA: Thank you. The next two speakers
14 are -- interesting. They have something to do with Navy.
15 Their experience -- I guess, working underground has got
16 some similarities to working under the water. We'll see
17 what we can learn.

18 The first one is Ken Sproul. He is the chief,
19 Quality Assurance and Material Testing Division at MSHA
20 Approval and Certification Center in Tridelphia. Ken
21 received a bachelor of science in electrical engineering
22 from the University of Pittsburgh in 1971. He also
23 completed graduate studies in electrical engineering at the
24 University of Maryland under a fellowship program sponsored
25 by the Navy Department. In 1980, Ken joined MSHA,

1 Administrations Approval and Certification Center as an
2 electrical engineer in the electrical power systems branch.

3 In 1981, he was promoted to the position of chief,
4 intrinsic safety and instrumentation branch. In 1992, he
5 became chief, quality assurance division. He later served
6 as chief, electrical safety division, before assuming his
7 present duties as chief, quality assurance and materials
8 testing division.

9 Ken has served as an expert witness in cases
10 involving intrinsic safety. He has authored several
11 publications and presented papers at a number of conferences
12 and meetings related to electrical equipment in underground
13 coal mines. Ken.

14 MR. SPROUL: Thank you very much and good morning.

15 It's my privilege to speak to you for a few minutes about
16 the evolution of MSHA's requirements for the use of
17 directional life lines in underground coal mines, and I
18 think it's totally appropriate that I was preceded to the
19 podium by Dr. Lazzara because he has very well made the case
20 from the research perspective of the effectiveness of life
21 lines as an escape tool for coal miners.

22 Now, I have to confess to you, though, that as
23 recently as four months ago, this was a subject that I knew
24 very little about, but I've read in the program that I'm now
25 considered an expert, and I guess that tells us that we

1 shouldn't always believe everything we read.

2 But the good thing is that the subject is not
3 really that complex. It's certainly not rocket science,
4 it's not high tech, and there is not a need for a mastery of
5 high-level mathematics to understand life lines. After all,
6 we're talking about a relatively simple device. It's just a
7 rope, but when it's used effectively, it just might have the
8 potential to save lives, and that's what it's all about.

9 But even the simplest things can get messy if we
10 don't focus on some simple principles, and so I'm going to
11 do my best this morning to keep us from getting tangled up
12 on the subject, and I'll try not to interject any more puns
13 either.

14 Let me talk now about the evolution of the
15 requirements for the use of life lines. First of all, I
16 should point out that several states, and these are the only
17 ones actually that I'm aware of, have mandated the use of
18 life lines under varying conditions for a number of years
19 now.

20 In West Virginia and Kentucky, life lines have
21 been required in alternate escapeways when those escapeways
22 are in return air courses. I'm sure the theory is that in
23 most emergency scenarios, the event is going to be more
24 likely to occur in by, and so if you're escaping through a
25 return, it's more likely to be filled with smoke, and so

1 it's more important to have life lines there.

2 You can see, though, that Virginia took the
3 opposite approach, and they require life lines in all
4 primary intake escapeways, and I'm sure their theory had to
5 do with something like this, that you're more likely to
6 select the primary escapeway as your first route of escape.

7 So there's two different philosophies there.

8 Now, let's talk about what we've done on the
9 federal level with MSHA. Prior to June of 2004, there
10 really were no requirements in MSHA's regulations that
11 mandated the use of directional life lines. At that time,
12 though, the belt air rule became effective, and it brought
13 with it the requirement that life lines be used in any air
14 courses that are designated as alternate escapeways when
15 they are ventilated by return air, not only for belt air
16 mines but for all mines.

17 Then, as David Dye told us this morning, in the
18 wake of the tragic accidents in West Virginia in January of
19 this year, the agency has issued an emergency temporary
20 standard under its authority in the Mine Act, and this is a
21 relatively extraordinary measure, only the third time we've
22 done such a thing. I'm not going to go through all of the
23 provisions. Mr. Dye has already done that. But I want to
24 focus on the life line provision.

25 This became effective on March 9 of this year,

1 when it was published in the Federal Register. The
2 requirements for life lines are contained in the ventilation
3 section where the requirements for escapeways are defined.
4 Here you see 75.380 defines the requirements for escapeways
5 in bituminous and lignite mines, and there is a parallel
6 requirement, which I won't show you, for anthracite mines as
7 well.

8 But essentially, the requirements for life lines
9 are these, and you'll see that they are primarily
10 performance oriented. There is not a great deal of detail,
11 but let's break it down and look at it one by one.

12 First of all, each escapeway is to be provided
13 with life lines, and that means that MSHA's approach is to
14 mandate the use of life lines in both the primary intake
15 escapeway and the alternate escapeway, and certainly I think
16 you can appreciate the theory here, that by having life
17 lines in both escapeways, it does increase the opportunity
18 for a successful escape, depending on the accident scenario
19 that the mines are confronted with.

20 The directional life lines or equivalent devices
21 are to be provided. Most likely it's going to be a rope,
22 and Chuck has already shown you the polypropylene version of
23 the directional life line, and here is the aircraft cable
24 type, and you're welcome to see me later and look at these
25 in detail, if you would like.

1 We did leave open the possibility that there might be
2 other equally effective means for achieving the same end,
3 and in some mines in the more permanent construction of the
4 out by areas, in the mains, for example, there might be a
5 handrail that would be installed that could serve as a life
6 line, so we didn't want to mandate that it be a rope. Some
7 mines have asked if they could use leaky feeder cables or
8 water lines or something of that effect. As long as it
9 meets all of these requirements that we've established for
10 life lines, we've said, at least to date, that that would be
11 acceptable.

12 Now, they are to be installed and maintained, and
13 I put an emphasis on "maintain" because if they are
14 installed and forgotten about, they may or may not be
15 available when they are most critically needed, namely,
16 during an escape scenario. They are to be installed and
17 maintained throughout the entire length of the escapeway,
18 and, of course, the escapeway is actually defined in this
19 same section in paragraph (b)(1), and you can read it there,
20 that escapeways are provided from the working section all
21 the way to the surface escape drift or to the escape shaft
22 or slope facilities to the surface. So it's a continuous
23 device that needs to be there for the entire length of the
24 escapeway.

25 Here is an example of what I mean by a

1 performance-oriented specification. It's to be made of
2 durable material, and we haven't specified what the material
3 is or what properties it should exhibit, but clearly it
4 needs to be strong enough to survive normal mining
5 conditions, for example, the degradation that may occur due
6 to humidity or heat. It should be available in an emergency
7 when miners need them the most, and they should be,
8 obviously, sturdy enough to withstand any intense physical
9 use that they are put to during the actual evacuation.

10 They are going to be marked with a reflective
11 material at least every 25 feet so that in those situations
12 where there is adequate visibility, the miners' cap lamps
13 can help them locate the life line quickly.

14 It should also be located in such a manner for
15 mines to use effectively during an escape. The proper
16 positioning, of course, of the life line regarding its
17 height and accessibility become key in the mines being able
18 to locate and use it. We would recommend that the life line
19 be installed at waist height so that the mines can stay
20 below the level of the densest smoke. There are tradeoffs,
21 of course. It's easier to make the installation along the
22 roof line, and some mines are electing to install that life
23 line along the roof but on breakaway hangars so that if it
24 were needed in an emergency, it could be pulled down to
25 where if the mines either needed to stoop over or even

1 crawl, they could do so.

2 Incidentally, a number of questions have been
3 raised regarding this requirement and others that I've
4 discussed already. We have developed a compliance guide
5 that's posted on our Web site in the format of a question-
6 and-answer format, and I would direct you there if you would
7 like to see what some of the key questions are that people
8 have been asking.

9 The directional indicators signifying the route of
10 escape, such as the cones that have been demonstrated to you
11 already, are to be placed in intervals not exceeding 100
12 feet. The purpose, of course, is to provide some tactile
13 feedback to the miners who may not be able to see because of
14 a dark, smoke-filled environment.

15 Now, there is nothing sacred about 100 feet. We
16 could have just as easily selected another number, and there
17 has been some debate about how critical this is. Obviously,
18 it's not a precision number, and we have been advising our
19 inspectors not to issue citations if the cone spacing is 101
20 feet or something of that nature because it's not that
21 critical.

22 What's even more critical perhaps is to adopt
23 something along the lines of what Chuck Lazzara suggested,
24 that at intersections or places where there may be
25 obstacles, overcasts, or whatever, there could be additional

1 cones or some other device placed that would give some
2 feedback concerning the situation.

3 Life lines are also to be securely attached to and
4 marked to show the location of supplemental storage of SCSRs
5 along the escapeways. If the miners need additional SCSRs
6 to make the escape, they need to be able to locate them, and
7 that's what this requirement is all about.

8 So here it is. It's a rope. At least, the
9 prefabricated ones that are available commercially are, for
10 the most part, these yellow, polypropylene ropes with the
11 reflective cones, and here is the aircraft cable version of
12 it. I know that at least one major mining company has
13 reportedly elected to use the aircraft cable type in their
14 out by areas because they believe it will be more durable
15 and less likely to be damaged with mobile equipment, and I'm
16 sure that's true. It is a little more costly. I think it's
17 roughly twice as expensive as the polypropylene rope.

18 Here again is the direction-of-travel indicator,
19 and it may seem to be counterintuitive, but that was the
20 design, and we're recommending that people install it and
21 use it that way. Theoretically, you could use it in
22 precisely the opposite direction, if you chose to, provided
23 the miners were trained, but because of movement of miners
24 from one mine to another or even visitors and others that
25 may come to the property, a uniform and consistent approach

1 across the nation would be much better.

2 Here is just a page from one of the vendors'
3 brochures. I chose to put this up here just so that you
4 could see what it looks like when a life line is actually
5 draped through a mine entry. Here is another vendor and
6 some information from their Web site. There's actually at
7 least three that I'm aware of now, and because of the newly
8 created market, there may be others that will be coming
9 along, but Cambria County Association for the Blind in
10 Evansburgh, Pennsylvania, has been a major supplier of
11 prefabricated life lines for a number of years, Boone Supply
12 in Boone County, West Virginia; and then the newest one that
13 I've learned about, in Logan, West Virginia: Mine Life
14 Line.

15 Well, have you reached the end of your rope yet?
16 If you're trying to escape through dense smoke in adverse
17 conditions, reaching the end of your rope is a good thing
18 because that means you've reached safety, and that's what
19 it's all about, saving lives. So thank you for your
20 attention.

21 (Applause.)

22 MR. GURTUNCA: Our last speaker before lunch is
23 Mr. Ryan Webb, who will talk about emergency recreation
24 hyperbaric stretcher. Ryan is a registered professional
25 engineer, and he has a bachelor of science degree in civil

1 engineering. He got this in 1993. He has got 10 years of
2 experience with the design, construction, installation,
3 test, and deployment of ocean systems. He is a U.S. Navy
4 second-class diver, July-November 1994. Very good.

5 Ryan works for PCCI, and he is manager for
6 acquisition and certification of the U.S. Navy's standard
7 Navy double-lock recompression chamber system. He also
8 manages the creation of a technical manual, including
9 operating emergency and maintenance procedures; acquisition
10 manager for the U.S. Navy's emergency hyperbaric stretcher.

11 He provided technical expertise, project management, and
12 liaison for acquisition and certification. He was a project
13 engineer for the modification to a U.S. Navy underwater
14 fibroscope, designed modifications to the underwater
15 housing, light source, and camera. He also managed the
16 subcontractors involved in fabrication of new equipment and
17 parts.

18 MR. WEBB: Good morning. My name is Ryan Webb, as
19 he said, and I work for PCCI, located just across the river
20 in Alexandria, Virginia. We are the U.S. distributor for
21 the SOS Hyperlight, which is called the emergency evacuation
22 hyperbaric stretcher, or EEHS, by the U.S. military, which
23 currently owns the largest number of these systems.

24 The EEHS, shown here, is a portable, monoplace,
25 folding, hyperbaric stretcher used to provide hyperbaric

1 oxygen therapy to injured personnel at remote sites. The
2 contact information for both PCCI and SOS is shown here. If
3 you would like more information on either the company or the
4 equipment, please see me after the session or call Mr. Alan
5 Becker at PCCI, and we would be happy to help you.

6 The EEHS allows first responders to an accident
7 site to provide an on-site, hyperbaric oxygen therapy to
8 injured personnel. This is important because in most cases
9 where HBOT is to be used, the sooner a treatment is started,
10 the better the results tend to be. There is now no need to
11 wait two to three days to get a highly effective treatment
12 for CO poisoning after an accident. The system is easy to
13 assemble and simple to use. In an emergency, the patient is
14 slid into the stretcher, the windows are installed, and a
15 few hoses are attached by way of quick disconnects. These
16 are sized to prevent an incorrect setup.

17 Once the patient is ready, the stretcher can be
18 pressurized, and the treatment can begin. Once the
19 treatment is started, the patient can be transported to a
20 full-sized, hospital facility recompression chamber.

21 Because of the light weight and small size of the
22 system, it is man portable and can be easily stored at a
23 mine site or transported to an accident location quickly.

24 The Undersea and Hyperbaric Medical Society
25 currently recognizes 13 indications for the use of

1 hyperbaric oxygen therapy. Obviously, not all of them are
2 applicable to the mining industry, but three of these
3 indications certainly are. These are carbon monoxide
4 poisoning, crush injuries, and thermal burns.

5 Carbon monoxide is a colorless, odorless gas that
6 is produced as a byproduct of combustion. The CO binds to
7 hemoglobin in red blood cells at the sites usually utilized
8 to carry oxygen to the tissues. Hyperbaric oxygen
9 accelerates the clearance of CO from the body, thereby
10 restoring oxygen delivery to sensitive tissues, such as the
11 heart and brain.

12 The Undersea and Hyperbaric Medical Society
13 currently recommends HBOT for individuals with serious CO
14 poisoning as manifest by transient or prolonged
15 unconsciousness, abnormal neurologic signs, cardiovascular
16 dysfunction, or severe acidosis.

17 For severe crush injuries, the rate of
18 complication, such as infection, nonhealing of fractures,
19 and amputations range up to 50 percent. When used with
20 orthopedic surgery and antibiotics, hyperbaric oxygen
21 therapy shows promise as a way to decrease complication from
22 severe crush injuries. HBOT increases oxygen delivery to
23 the injured tissues, reduces swelling, and provides an
24 improved environment for healing.

25 HBOT should be started as soon after an injury as

1 possible. A number of related conditions, including
2 compartment syndrome and thermal burns, are also benefitted
3 by hyperbaric therapy. Thermal burns, if not fatal, can
4 cause disastrous long-term physical and emotional disability
5 to the survivor. Especially in enclosed-space fires,
6 thermal and smoke damage to lungs can occur.

7 Adjunctive, hyperbaric oxygen therapy has been
8 shown to limit the progression of the burn injury, reduce
9 swelling, reduce the need for surgery, diminish lung damage,
10 and shorten the hospitalization time for the patient. These
11 benefits are more apparent if therapy is initiated within
12 six to 24 hours of the burn injury. Ideally, the patient
13 should have three sessions within the first 24 hours and
14 then continue treatment as directed by a burn therapy
15 expert.

16 Indications for HBOT typically include deep,
17 second- or third-degree burns that involve greater than 20
18 percent of the total body surface area and less extensive
19 burns that involve the hands, face, or groin area.

20 Here is the Hyperlight. It is a foldable,
21 portable pressure vessel which uses light-weight, composite
22 materials to provide a safe treatment environment. The
23 Hyperlight is rigid when inflated but when not in use can be
24 folded up into two compact travel cases. The gas supply for
25 the system -- this is not shown in this photograph -- can be

1 provided by PCCI as an optional item or by the end user to
2 their own specifications.

3 The system is rated at 30.5 PSI, which allows a
4 full United States Navy Treatment Table 6 to be performed
5 even in an unpressurized aircraft at up to 10,000 feet.
6 It's 88 and a half inches long and 23 and a half inches in
7 diameter. The weights shown here can vary, as there are
8 some optional extras, which we'll come to shortly. This
9 slide also gives you the case sizes.

10 This is a United States Navy team transporting a
11 patient in the Hyperlight. The photo also shows the gas
12 supply system. You can kind of make it out in the back.
13 This is what the U.S. Navy uses. It has two bottles in it,
14 one oxygen, one air, and they have probably already
15 exhausted one full air cylinder in order to pressurize the
16 system.

17 Here is a photograph of the two cases that the
18 system comes in, and this is the control box. It contains
19 inputs for both air and oxygen, and on the output side there
20 are connections for a built-in breathing system, or BIBS,
21 the main stretcher air supply, the main vent, and a
22 pneumofathometer connection to allow the chamber pressure to
23 be read at the control box.

24 This shows the stretcher folded into its storage
25 container with the control box in its storage location on

1 top. To prepare the stretcher tube for assembly, all you
2 need to do is turn the storage container on its side and
3 pull out the tube.

4 These are the contents of the smaller case. This
5 includes the two windows, all of the hoses, and the
6 regulators that would go on the gas bottles.

7 Standard items that come with the stretcher
8 include BIBS, communications, regulators, handling straps, a
9 timer, and storage containers.

10 These systems can be built to a number of
11 standards if used internationally, but for use in the U.S.
12 they should be built to the American Society of Mechanical
13 Engineers safety standard for pressure vessels and human
14 occupancy, or ASME PVHO-1.

15 These next couple of slides show the components
16 that come standard with the system. This is another
17 photograph of the control box, the two cases stacked, and
18 then the components packed into the cases.

19 This shows a full system setup on the left-hand
20 side, the penetration window in the middle, which is where
21 all of your hoses from the control box attach to, and the
22 unfolding of the tube.

23 Here are some optional items that can be purchased
24 with the EEHS: The medical log, which is used to send
25 material into or out of the stretcher during treatments.

1 Dome hinge protection rings should not be on this
2 photograph. They are required by the PVHO standard, but if
3 you're buying an international tube that's done to Lloyd's,
4 they may have different rings around the outsides of the
5 windows.

6 Gas cylinders and a gas cart are an optional item.

7 The amount of gas varies depending on the treatment, and
8 different users may want a different gas supply system.
9 PCCI can supply a standardized gas supply package or can
10 customize one to your requirements.

11 Some other options are oxygen and carbon dioxide
12 analyzers, connectors for electrocardiograms, ventilators,
13 or other monitoring equipment, lifting slings, and a second
14 pressure gauge, which would be located inside the stretcher.

15 This acts as a backup to the main gauge in the control box,
16 and during air transport in an unpressurized aircraft, it
17 will allow direct readings of the actual pressure inside the
18 chamber.

19 The next couple of slides show this optional
20 equipment and women, and then some other items that I
21 haven't mentioned yet.

22 The drag mattress shown here, it's useful. It
23 makes the treatment much more comfortable for the patient,
24 and it makes entry and egress for the patient much easier,
25 as well, especially for an unconscious occupant.

1 The internal gauge is shown here, and the window
2 with the medical lock, which is at the other end from the
3 penetration window.

4 The hyperlight emergency evacuation hyperbaric
5 stretcher is a safe and effective way to treat carbon
6 monoxide poisoning, crush injuries, and burns by using a
7 small, lightweight, and highly portable piece of equipment.

8 Before I end today I'd like to read a short
9 article from the Journal of Emergency Medicine regarding a
10 treatment that took place recently in Afghanistan by U.S.
11 military forces. I quote: "We report the first case of
12 suspected carbon monoxide poisoning treated by a hyperbaric
13 oxygen therapy by using a portable hyperbaric stretcher. A
14 40-year-old British man in Kabul, Afghanistan was found
15 unresponsive in his apartment. Initial treatment consisted
16 of oxygen by mask at a combat support hospital for several
17 hours, with minimal improvement. Operational security and
18 risk prevented his immediate evacuation to the nearest fixed
19 hyperbaric facility.

20 "He was subsequently treated twice using emergency
21 evacuation hyperbaric stretchers. According to the U.S.
22 Navy Diving Manual Treatment Table Nine, the patient showed
23 marked neurologic improvement after the first treatment, and
24 experienced near-complete recovery before his eventual
25 evacuation."

1 This case illustrates the practical use of
2 portable chambers for the treatment of suspected cases of
3 carbon monoxide poisoning in an austere environment.

4 Thank you for your time today. If there are any
5 questions, please see me afterwards or fill out a card with
6 the gentleman in the back. Thank you.

7 (Applause.)

8 MR. FINFINGER: I'd like to thank all the
9 presenters for their excellent presentations. Now we would
10 like to break for lunch, and we'll come back at 12:30 to
11 hear the third session.

12 Thank you very much.

13 (Whereupon, at 11:30 a.m., the hearing was
14 recessed, to reconvene at 12:30 p.m. this same day, Tuesday,
15 April 18, 2006.)

16 //

17 //

18 //

19 //

20 //

21 //

22 //

23 //

24 //

25 //

A F T E R N O O N S E S S I O N

(12:30 p.m.)

1
2
3 MR. KRAVITZ: Welcome back this afternoon. We
4 have been leading up to the rescue shelters portion of this
5 workshop.

6 I've already mentioned some design considerations,
7 touched on it briefly. This afternoon we'll get into it a
8 lot more deeply, with the manufacturers and some other types
9 of discussions on emergency shelters.

10 To kick it off this afternoon we have Dr. Jan
11 Oberholzer. He's an alumnus of the University of Pretoria,
12 the Wichestrand and Wineza. I know I'm murdering that, but
13 you can correct that if you want. He has been involved with
14 coal and other types of mining for over 30 years with
15 production, technical services, management, and research.

16 For 15 years he worked for the Chamber of Mines of
17 South Africa, a research organization. When he left South
18 Africa, he was the Senior Coal Mining Consultant for CSIR, a
19 Division of Mining Technology.

20 He is presently the Manager of Mining Research and
21 Development at SIMTARS in Australia. He is published widely
22 in his field, which ranges from mine productivity issues,
23 safety and health, as well as the environmental side of
24 mining.

25 He is a Fellow of the South African Institute for

1 Mining and Metallurgy, the Mine Ventilation Society, a
2 member of the SME, and a life member of the American Society
3 for Mine Rehabilitation and Reclamation.

4 Of importance to this meeting is that he was the
5 Chief of Field Investigations of the coal mining of the
6 Chamber of Mine Research Organization when he was a post-
7 lobane incident work was done. We heard about that earlier
8 from Kobus. And led to the introduction of self-contained
9 self-rescuers and other rescue methods in South African coal
10 mines.

11 So again, another wealth of experience. And
12 please welcome Mr. Oberholzer.

13 (Applause.)

14 MR. OBERHOLZER: Ladies and gentlemen, I would
15 like to discuss a few aspects of the design and installation
16 of refuge chambers. I would like to do it at the end of
17 basically some history we'd all like to go back to. And
18 then secondly, considering that I've had the experience of
19 doing it in South Africa and in Queensland, I would like to
20 give you some of my experiences there.

21 When one talks about matters like this, one always
22 harks back to the history. And I think one of the most
23 important historical facts is the Coriaz mine disaster of
24 1906, which actually, for the first time, accepted that coal
25 dust plays a significant role.

1 In a similar way, I think Slebon in 1993 pointed
2 out to the use of self-contained self-rescuers in coal
3 mines.

4 In 1987 a rather nasty accident where 177 people
5 were killed due to a fire of insulation material in a gold
6 mine almost mandated the use of self-contained self-rescuers
7 in gold mines. In 1993, at precisely the point when the
8 South African industry felt that they really almost knew it
9 all, the Middlebult disaster happened, which led to the Leon
10 Commission.

11 In 1995, six months after the Leon Commission's
12 findings were accepted by all, Fowl Reefs managed to drop a
13 locomotive down the shaft. It killed 137 people, which
14 really made the Leon Commission's implementation mandatory
15 in South Africa. It changed the whole scene of mining in
16 South Africa, possibly the same way as Sago might change the
17 scene of mining in America.

18 In Australia, in the Moura Number Four disaster,
19 1986, it only killed 12 people, but it was significant in
20 that, at that time they still used filter self-rescuers.
21 But at that point they found that the normal flame safety
22 lamp wasn't suitable any more.

23 Moura Number Two in 1994 only had 11 people dead.
24 They had filter self-rescuers, but this warden's inquiry
25 led to the development of new safety standards.

1 It is a rather nasty little fact between Moura
2 Number Two and Korea's 1906, something that very few people
3 know. In 1906, 25 days after the whole mine was destroyed
4 by a coal dust explosion, 12 people came out of the mine.
5 Three days later, another person came out, and closed the
6 mine four days after the explosion.

7 What I'd like to discuss with you today is how do
8 things happen in South Africa. Why do we choose a refuge
9 base? What was expected from them? And how Queensland,
10 which has based some of their thoughts on refuge bays and on
11 South Africa, and on some of the experience we have had, and
12 on the present feelings?

13 I think we must understand how the coal mining
14 environment looked in South Africa, 1983/84. The sections
15 were long; they were distributed geographically about three
16 to four kilometers. The sections themselves were about six,
17 seven rows wide, and over a kilometer in length. It was
18 mostly board-and-pillar mining, and there was up to six
19 sections per shaft. We had to get coal out to feed the
20 power stations.

21 The interesting thing was there were 30 people per
22 section, on average. In other words, in the event of an
23 explosion or an incident, you would have these people
24 streaming to the shaft, trying to escape. I would like you
25 to consider 180 people arriving at various caches of self-

1 rescuers at different times, at different places.

2 If one looks at crowd behavior, very seldom are
3 people killed in an indoor place like this when there is a
4 fire. They get killed due to trampling or to other issues.

5 And this is one of the issues why we decided to install
6 refuge bays. And this was based in those days when we did
7 this work, we did various scenarios. In those days it
8 wasn't called scenario planning, it was called what-if.

9 We actually could not find an alternative solution
10 to the identified problems. How are we going to divvy up
11 extended breathing apparatuses to people arriving at
12 different times at these places? I do not even believe that
13 we could do it today.

14 So what we came up with was the best horse for the
15 course at that time. We drew up certain general
16 specifications, and we left it up to the mines to develop
17 the details, for the very same reason as it was a horse for
18 the course.

19 We came up with some generic issues, design
20 issues. The first one was that it had to withstand an over-
21 pressure event of 20 psi. If one goes into work that was
22 done in the U.S. Bureau of Mines, work done by the people
23 that did the atomic explosions, work that was done by a
24 crowd called the McCracken Investigation in Australia, they
25 found that at an over-pressure of 20 psi, you will have a

1 50-percent chance for survival.

2 That means that at 20 psi, you will have people
3 that you can rescue. If you have a coal dust explosion
4 where you start running into very, very high pressures, the
5 chance of anybody having anybody to rescue was very small.

6 The other issue is that the first place that a
7 person needs to go to, and this will be a refuge bay or
8 whatever, needs to be within 600 meters. And this was due
9 to the matters of disorientation that was found by gentlemen
10 like Dr. Kilbloc (ph) or Mr. Funensberg (ph), because they
11 found that even though you can get there within the 15-
12 minute self-contained self-rescuer, possibly you wouldn't be
13 able to make it due to disorientation.

14 Another issue is that your refuge bay needs to
15 have a positive pressure inside the bay. And this is due to
16 the way that you would have pollution into that bay from the
17 sea air on the outside. Therefore, the doors had to create
18 a kind of seal.

19 The other issue is that this refuge bay has to be
20 well-signed or identified. We, even in those initial days,
21 considered fencing your roadways off so you would have to
22 lead your workers into that bay.

23 Communications to surface seemed to be very
24 important, and has actually been proven afterwards to be
25 even imperative. Provision of food, water, and sanitation

1 facilities was seen to be important.

2 There needs to be air supply, because basically
3 the problem that you're dealing with is a poisonous, toxic,
4 asphyxiating atmosphere. So we need to have a supply of
5 breathing air. We also have to have a positive pressure in
6 that chamber, and we have to have a cooling of the
7 environment.

8 Now, South Africa has a problem, and Queensland,
9 for instance, not. There is no compressed air in the coal
10 mines of South Africa. And I have an idea that there is not
11 much compressed air in the coal mines of America. It's a
12 kind of electric type of operation.

13 That's why, in South Africa, with its fairly
14 shallow mines -- 150 meters -- it was actually very much
15 easier just to drill a hole down and put a fan on top.
16 Where this was impossible, oxygen generators or bottles was
17 used. Unfortunately, when you use that, you do not have
18 pressure in your refuge bay.

19 The other issue is the issue of communication.
20 This is not only based on what we thought, but what I have
21 seen subsequently in Queensland exercises. There is an
22 immense need for leadership in the first-occurrence trauma.
23 People need to have somebody to look at. The only problem
24 is, I don't know how many of you have ever put on a self-
25 contained self-rescuer. Anybody in this place that

1 actually? You would know how well you can speak to your
2 fellow human being when you've got that thing in your mouth.
3 Communication comes to a grinding, sudden halt when you use
4 self-contained self-rescuer.

5 In Queensland we use a thing called a compressed
6 air breathing apparatus. This is where you've got a full
7 face mask. Even at best, it's almost impossible. There's
8 problems with one-way communication, and this is even if you
9 phone or you get a message, the people up top do not know
10 what you want to say, and sometimes disregard you.

11 And there's also a very strong need for a
12 consolidation of acts. Once that initial panic and problems
13 are sorted out, people need to just sit back and say how
14 best do we carry on from here.

15 Now, there's some historic proof refuge bays have
16 worked well in South Africa and have saved lives; elsewhere,
17 as well. In Gloria Mine, after a fire, after four days,
18 that got people out alive. At Emaswati Colliery, they had a
19 major fall in the intakes. They had people captured behind
20 it, and they got them out, very much similar to the Quecreek
21 incident. Canada and Tasmania had one, with Tasmania
22 seemingly, the Australians, anything they were really
23 concerned about is they would have liked more finger
24 biscuits.

25 (Laughter.)

1 However, we must realize one thing. And this is,
2 if you look at the news and that, the fact that you've got a
3 refuge bay does not mean you're going to save all the
4 people. You're still going to kill people, because they
5 might not just reach it.

6 In comparison to what I've just told you, I'd like
7 to just share with you some aspects of the Queensland Mine
8 environment. We have got a very, very low number of
9 workers. Concentrated mining, high seams, on the order of
10 four, four and a half meters, long walls, one development
11 section, one long wall per mine. We have immensely high air
12 speeds, which means that if you have a fire, you will
13 pollute your mine in some cases under a half an hour.

14 We also work with a very much less prescriptive
15 regulation. We work with a regulation which is based and
16 supports risk assessment and risk management, which I think
17 Professor Joy will tell us significantly more about this
18 afternoon. It is a high emphasis on the management of risks
19 and the use of safety management plans.

20 If we look at what came out of the changeover in
21 the communication stations with relevance to this, and now
22 this could be a refuge bay, it could be a halfway station,
23 you can call it whatever you want. And this was made by the
24 Task Group Four following them out of disaster. That the
25 intervals at which these stations were should be based on

1 the person traveling on foot. It should be ready,
2 locateable, and accessible. It should resist low-intensity
3 explosions, similar like in South Africa. It should be
4 provided with restorable air, provided with robust
5 communications, a method to determine toxicity and oxygen
6 content of the air. And it should be sized capable for
7 demand.

8 Now, in Queensland we have what we would call the
9 level-one exercise, and it's held every year. And this is a
10 very, very close simulation to a real disaster or
11 catastrophe. The mines know who they are, they just don't
12 know when it happens. And the way it is done is that it
13 really, we come up with a scenario, we put it to them. We
14 simulate everything. We ask them to do this.

15 But there has been some significant experiences
16 out of this. And I've synthesized this into a few points.
17 The first thing is that communications is a massive problem.

18 The second one is that the changeover to EBAs is a
19 serious problem. For example, the very first exercise we
20 had, which was the Southern Colliery, half of the people
21 lost their lives due to the fact they couldn't open an
22 Ocenco EBA with wet hands. Beautifully ergonomically
23 designed, soft, smooth system. But the moment you take it
24 with wet hands, you cannot open it.

25 In Australia, we have mateship. It is a sad fact

1 of life that the self-escape and the self-rescuer means
2 precisely what it says: you only have enough air to make
3 yourself escape and to rescue yourself. When you start
4 looking after mates, it becomes very difficult to take
5 somebody out of a mine.

6 There is also the decision-making in the
7 aftermath. You do not have time, and that is precisely when
8 you need time. Traveling in escape routes can be beyond the
9 capability of rescue crews. In other words, to get down and
10 help somebody is too far for any rescue crew to actually get
11 to.

12 The other one is, whether we like it or not, not
13 all men are equal. They are neither physically equal or
14 mentally equal. Sometimes the people that you would believe
15 are the most suitable to rescue themselves are the most
16 unsuitable. And even if it is a simulated exercise, things
17 are not that easy. I have personally seen how people give
18 up hope, and they actually stand there and realize that if
19 this was the real thing, they would have actually died. It
20 is an amazing thing to see that realization in a fellow
21 human being's face.

22 The historical reality in Queensland is the
23 following. That even though we have had exercises every
24 year since 1998, we have identified issues, we made
25 alterations, there are lists of issues that have come up, I

1 believe that our industry is as highly committed as any
2 industry could be. But we have unfortunately have had many
3 successes, and even more failures, that shows where things
4 aren't really well.

5 The unfortunate part, or very fortunate part, is
6 that we have had no real emergencies against which we can
7 test our present system.

8 Just some concluding thoughts. Refuge bays,
9 emergency shelters, safe havens, changeover stations are
10 basically all the same concept; some way for a person to go
11 if he's going to run out of air. They are not easy to
12 install, and they are not easy to maintain. There are,
13 however, quite a few alternatives out there that the mine
14 can use.

15 But I would like to point out that in my
16 experience in both of these countries, that the refuge bay
17 or these havens is not the solution. It is only part of a
18 system of a very, very big system to get your people safe.
19 These places must suit and fit in with a system at the mine.

20 To give you an example. The distance to your
21 refuge bay in a mine that is two meters high will be
22 significantly different to a mine where you've got four
23 meters' height.

24 The bottom line is that a refuge bay costs money,
25 it costs effort, and it costs other resources. The only

1 reality of life is that if you do not spend that money, the
2 alternative is that you will be held to task, say, if this
3 person did not have enough air to breathe.

4 Gentlemen, I thank you.

5 (Applause.)

6 MR. KRAVITZ: Now we'll move you a little bit
7 north, and we'll talk about Canada. Canadian experiences,
8 Alex Gryska, graduated from Ellieburry School of Mines as a
9 Mining Engineer Technologist in 1974, as an adult educator
10 from St. Francis Xavier University in 1992.

11 He's a certified occupational health and safety
12 technologist with the American Board of Industrial Hygiene,
13 and the Board of Certified Safety Professionals.

14 Alex gained his industrial experience working at
15 the Kerr-Edison Mine in Virginiatown and at the McKassa Mine
16 in Kirkland Lake. He was responsible for ventilation and
17 health matters while at the McKassa Mine.

18 He was more than 20 years at the Ministry of
19 Labor. Alex worked in various positions, ranging from
20 inspector, special investigations officer, trainer,
21 mediator, advisor, regional program advisor, and ending his
22 career at the Ministry as Manager of the Sault Ste. Marie
23 District.

24 Alex has been associated with Imperial Mine Rescue
25 in various capacities since 1975, and has been the Manager

1 of Ontario Mine Rescue with the Mines and Aggregates Safety
2 and Health Association, MASHA, since 2001.

3 And, Alex. Please welcome.

4 (Applause.)

5 MR. GRYSKA: Thank you, and good afternoon.

6 Refuge stations are an essential component of the
7 emergency preparedness infrastructure at Canadian mines,
8 regardless of what part of the country you may be in.
9 Without doubt, they have resulted in saving countless lives.

10 Although most of our mines have refuge stations,
11 there is no strict legislative requirement to establish
12 them. Mine operators have found them to be an invaluable
13 component of the safety infrastructure, and therefore
14 integrated them voluntarily.

15 Ontario does not have any active coal mines;
16 therefore, the hazards associated with our mining are
17 somewhat different than what you folks encounter here in the
18 coal mining industry. We do have some open-cut coal mines
19 in the west coast, and I believe we have one underground
20 coal mine operating on the east coast.

21 Our mines are generally quite large. They can
22 extend for several miles laterally, and we will be mining as
23 deep as 10,000 feet. We're not quite as deep as the South
24 Africans; however, they are very deep mines.

25 Most of our mines are multi-leveled operations,

1 where travel time from surface to the active workplace can
2 be very significant. In some circumstances, it can take as
3 long as an hour to get from surface to the active workplace.

4 These realities pose significant challenges to
5 being able to ensure the safety of our miners, particularly
6 in the event of an emergency. Mine emergency plans are
7 developed by mine operators, and each plan is unique to
8 their particular application.

9 In the event of an emergency, it's the intention
10 to get workers out of harm's way effectively and
11 efficiently. Although it's preferable to get them to
12 surface immediately, it's not always possible, particularly
13 when you take into consideration the vastness of a mine and
14 their travel times.

15 In these circumstances, underground workers go to
16 strategically-located refuge stations, and remain there
17 until first responders are able to arrive.

18 Although we continue to focus on prevention, every
19 year we encounter situations that require the services of
20 our mine rescue crews. We have incidents where workers seek
21 safety in refuge stations, and remain there until rescue
22 teams are able to get them out from underground safely.

23 The recent incident at Esterhage Saskatchewan
24 earlier this year is an example of how these refuge stations
25 can work effectively. As you probably know, 72 miners

1 sought refuge in underground stations, and remained there
2 for some 30 hours, while rescue teams extinguished an
3 underground mine fire and cleared the mine of toxic gases.
4 Events similar to this, but perhaps not quite as
5 substantial, have occurred, and have gone with minimal
6 notice from the media or anybody else at our Ontario
7 operations.

8 Our legislation requires that we have mandatory
9 inquests into every event that results in the death of a
10 miner. These hearings have resulted in numerous
11 recommendations which have, in turn, resulted in legislative
12 changes that have improved the quality of working life for
13 our miners.

14 In 1928 we had a major underground mine fire at
15 one of our gold mines, which our mine rescue teams were
16 unable to handle the situation. Because of our limited
17 resources, we requested the assistance of the United States
18 Bureau of Mines Mine Rescue Teams, who responded and finally
19 got the fire under control.

20 Thirty-nine miners lost their lives as a result of
21 that fire. An inquiry was held to investigate the
22 circumstances relating to this event, and it changed the
23 approach that we took towards mine rescue. Numerous
24 recommendations were made by the coroner's jury. Many of
25 these have been transformed into legislation, which remain

1 the framework that we have currently in place today.

2 Although not specifically referenced in a
3 recommendation, refuge stations were first introduced at
4 Ontario mines as a result of this tragic event. Mine
5 operators recognized the value of providing temporary refuge
6 for workers, and their existence continues not only in
7 Ontario mines, but mines right across Canada. Pretty much
8 in any province that you go to you'll find that there are
9 refuge stations.

10 Our legislation does not require refuge stations
11 to be established at all mines. However, it does state that
12 they must meet a specified criteria where they are addressed
13 by a mine's emergency plan. This approach allows for
14 flexibility for mine operators to conduct a risk assessment
15 and establish procedures which are appropriate for their
16 particular situation. In all circumstances, it's the intent
17 that the workers seek temporary refuge in those situations
18 where they cannot get safely to surface.

19 And again, I have an excerpt from the legislation
20 in Ontario where it specifies where a procedure, in case of
21 a fire at an underground mine, provides for the use of
22 refuge stations for workers, the station shall "be
23 constructed with materials having at least a one-hour fire-
24 resistance rating; be of sufficient size to accommodate the
25 workers to be assembled therein" -- and the risk assessment

1 as conducted by the employer would determine the maximum
2 number of employees that might need to gather in that
3 particular situation -- "be capable of being sealed to
4 prevent the entry of gases; have a means of voice
5 communication with surface" -- and that's normally done by
6 telephone or leaky feeder systems -- "and be equipped with
7 the means for the supply of compressed air and potable
8 water."

9 We have developed a refuge station guideline in
10 which we determined some of the good practices that need to
11 be integrated into the system. For example, things such as
12 obviously an air line, a supply of air.

13 Although until most recently, all of our mines,
14 pretty much all of our mines had compressed air lines
15 because we used pneumatic equipment for the purpose of
16 operating drills and other pneumatic equipment. Therefore,
17 air lines were present pretty much throughout the entire
18 mine.

19 As far as potable water is concerned, it would be
20 supplied to the refuge station.

21 Fire or sealing clay. Again, you can't get a
22 perfect seal; therefore, it made sense to have available at
23 each refuge station fire sealing clay.

24 As mentioned, a communication system. And I have
25 some digital images of some of these set up that we will be

1 looking at. So we will take a look at what we have as far
2 as telephone system.

3 A system of lighting, seating, and emergency
4 equipment, including stretchers, blankets, first aid kits,
5 fire extinguishers, and miscellaneous supplies, which
6 includes a copy of the emergency procedure, level maps, pens
7 and pencils.

8 As far as the types of refuge stations that we
9 have in our Ontario mines, we have permanent stations that
10 come equipped with compressed air lines, we have permanent
11 stations with the RANA system, Rimer Alco North American
12 System, so they are the manufacturer. And basically, those
13 are in those situations where we don't have compressed air
14 line. For example, some of our deeper operations, they do
15 not have compressed air lines. Therefore, what we need is
16 to provide a self-sustaining environment. And portable
17 stations with cascade air cylinders.

18 Now, we have an idealized sketch of a refuge
19 station. You'll note in this case here there is just a
20 single door. Basically, you have a drain in the floor with
21 a P-trap in order to prevent gases from entering.
22 Similarly, you'll notice on the sink, the same thing, we
23 have a P-trap in there. Air and water lines. And as you
24 can see, this would have been excavated out of rock.

25 You have seating that's provided for workers,

1 copies of procedures, first aid kit, et cetera. Fire
2 extinguishers, telephones, et cetera. And we have some
3 refuge stations with a double door, so basically with an air
4 lock. You have a door here, and a door there.

5 Now, as was mentioned by previous speakers, the
6 issue of the air moving from the fresh-air side of the
7 refuge station to the exterior, by having that air lock, a
8 rescue team would be able to go through their pass properly.

9 And the other things would have been pretty much the same.

10 Now, I've got a sequence of refuge stations
11 photographs. Here's an underground refuge station outside
12 entrance. You can see the way that they're marked up. You
13 notice, well, you can't see the P-trap, but it would be
14 under the floor. And you can see the door. Under most
15 circumstances they come with a sill, so then the door will
16 seal properly.

17 So this would be looking at the inside of the
18 refuge station. You'll notice that we have a hot water
19 tank, and there would be a sink in this particular one.

20 Again, as far as the refuge stations are
21 concerned, under most circumstances, what we do is we use
22 refuge stations as lunchrooms. It serves a dual purpose.
23 So it gives the individuals a location to congregate. The
24 other thing is it allows them to become familiar and be
25 familiar with the installation. So in this case here,

1 you'll notice there's a microwave oven, there's a stove, and
2 there's a heating oven, along with a water fountain, et
3 cetera.

4 As mentioned, fire procedures are posted in there.

5 The workers, when they get an opportunity to familiarize
6 themselves with the proper procedures, along with level
7 plans for the operations, know where to go in the event of
8 an emergency.

9 As mentioned, there's a stretcher, stretcher box,
10 an eyewash station, an emergency list of occupants. So
11 that's a list of individuals that would be working in that
12 area. Again, it's necessary for somebody to take control in
13 the event of an emergency; you can always cross-check
14 against that list.

15 And again, we have, in this case here, we have a
16 telephone system, along with telephone numbers that an
17 individual would be able to call to inform them that there
18 is an emergency that's ongoing.

19 As mentioned to you, fire clay. Fire clay is
20 maintained in a bucket at each refuge station door, and it
21 would be used to seal the door.

22 So we have air and water lines plugged in. And
23 again, we put a silencer on there. We keep the air line
24 cracked at all times in order to keep it under positive
25 pressure, but at any given time that air line would be on.

1 The other thing is, what we do is we use ethyl
2 mercaptan as a stench warning gas if workers were in the
3 refuge station. This way here, with the air line being
4 cracked continually, they would know if there is an
5 emergency that's ongoing.

6 As mentioned, you can see that under most
7 circumstances, our stations are going to be screened and
8 bolted properly. We'll shock-treat the walls, and whitewash
9 them so they're easy to maintain and clean. Also, they're
10 all cement floors, in order to make sure that they can be
11 kept clean. And as I mentioned to you, the refuge stations
12 are used as lunch areas.

13 As I mentioned, some of our refuge stations are
14 located in areas where there are no air lines that are
15 available. We have one of our operations that is using this
16 refuge one system. So basically what it does is, either
17 you'll have oxygen that's supplied with cylinders, or it
18 will be oxygen candles. You'll have a carbon dioxide cover;
19 the air is passed through there via a fan, therefore giving
20 sustainability to the inhabitants in a refuge station.

21 As far as refuge station procedures are concerned,
22 we have procedures that require investigation of incidents
23 where mine rescue teams are used. They can be real
24 emergencies, drills, or simulations. Regardless, we gather
25 information, assess it, and make procedural changes in order

1 to make improvements where necessary. Over the years we've
2 collected our learnings and developed a refuge station
3 guideline, which is a compilation of information regarding
4 good practice, and we make it available to our customer
5 group.

6 When an emergency requires that a refuge station
7 be used, a knowledgeable person needs to take control within
8 the refuge station. Being sealed in a refuge station can
9 and will cause enormous psychological implications on its
10 inhabitants.

11 The person in charge needs to reassure workers,
12 have them stay calm, and continually assure them that mine
13 rescue teams will come to their aid.

14 Depending on the type of arrangement, they may
15 need to use air sparingly. And that's why we keep the air
16 header cracked slightly. If we're using bottled air, again,
17 the sustainability will be dictated by the amount of
18 compressed air cylinders that you would have there.

19 The individual needs to contact surface and inform
20 them of the situation, assuming it's a mine emergency, and
21 provide them with key pieces of information: the number of
22 men that are in the refuge station, whether compressed air
23 is available, whether workers have any injuries, and
24 indicate that they are prepared to stay there if they, in
25 fact, are.

1 Our mines are required to prepare an effective
2 emergency plan that will protect the safety and health of
3 our underground mine workers. The establishment of refuge
4 stations does not replace the need for preparing an
5 effective emergency plan, but rather is one small component
6 of that plan.

7 Training is also a vital component of the plan.
8 All workers must be trained in what to do in the event of an
9 emergency. Training must address where workers are to go,
10 and what tasks they need to perform. Mine emergency plans
11 often identify refuge stations as temporary safe havens, and
12 that's what they are is temporary.

13 The training should prepare individuals to take
14 control, ensure the safety of refuge station inhabitants,
15 and make appropriate telephone calls. Our organization
16 provides standardized emergency preparedness training to
17 supervisors, control groups, and employers, and helps them
18 prepare for both fire and non-fire incidents.

19 Evaluating the emergency preparedness system and
20 procedures needs to be done on a regular basis. We require
21 that fire drills be conducted at each operating mine once
22 per shift, per year.

23 Furthermore, we conduct audits of the system. We
24 have developed a point-in-time evaluation tool which helps
25 to assess the effectiveness of the emergency preparedness

1 system. This tool looks at response times of first
2 responders, and provides guidance as to the availability and
3 adequacy of first responders.

4 Continuous improvement is critical to the
5 emergency planning process. As mining advances, the
6 adequacy of mine emergency plans must be evaluated. Are
7 refuge stations still strategically accessible to mine
8 workers, or do new refuge stations need to be established?
9 These are questions that need to be answered on an ongoing
10 basis.

11 Although we focus on prevention, and we continue
12 to have fire and non-fire incidents at our mines, some of
13 these have potential serious consequences. All the more
14 reason that we need to learn from them, and make
15 improvements as needed.

16 In conclusion, refuge stations are common at
17 Canadian mines, and they have proven their worth time and
18 time again. We need to remain vigilant and ensure that we
19 do not strictly rely on refuge stations as being our
20 emergency plan. They are, after all, only one component of
21 that plan, and their use kicks in only after prevention has
22 failed.

23 Are refuge stations an option to the safety and
24 structure in coal mines? I don't think it's an easy
25 question to answer. There obviously are some significant

1 differences between our mines, which are metal mines, and
2 non-coal. And that poses challenges to applying the
3 technology.

4 Refuge stations have been invaluable to us in
5 Canada, where we are primarily, as mentioned, hard-rock
6 mines. I do believe, however, that by sharing our knowledge
7 and experience, we may be able to distill and apply
8 principles and approaches that may make mining that much
9 safer for all of our workers.

10 Thank you.

11 (Applause.)

12 MR. KRAVITZ: Okay. The next speaker has quite a
13 bit of experience, and I know him quite well. We used to
14 work together for many years. I was working on the Mine
15 Emergency Project, and he was with Foster-Miller, working on
16 various remote-sealing projects and various robotics
17 projects.

18 Randy Berry has been associated with Foster-Miller
19 for 36 years doing contract research and development for
20 private industry, government agencies, including the Bureau
21 of Mines, MSHA, DOE, Navy and Air Force. He has two patents
22 for underground mine equipment, and received MSHA permits
23 for both intrinsic safety and explosion-proof instruments.

24 Different projects he's worked on over the last 35
25 years include robotics systems for the maintenance of

1 commercial nuclear power plants, development of the mine
2 rescue TV cameras and instruments to insert in bore holes,
3 including a remote viewing system that was one of the
4 predecessors of one of the newer types that are on the
5 market today; health and safety studies for the U.S. Bureau
6 of Mines and MSHA with a special emphasis on ventilation in
7 mine emergency systems.

8 Randy was one of the co-authors on the 1983
9 published report on guidelines for rescue chambers, and
10 that's what he's here to talk to you about today, among
11 other things. And I think Randy's going to give you some
12 good information.

13 So without further ado, Randy Berry.

14 (Applause.)

15 MR. BERRY: Thank you, Jeff. I'm delighted,
16 having been preceded by several other speakers that have
17 talked quite a bit about rescue chambers, to find that I
18 don't think they're going to be able to call me a liar or
19 vice-versa, so that's a little bit reassuring.

20 Before I get started, let me just give you a
21 little bit more background about who Foster-Miller is, and
22 why we are here today. What do I press here, anything?
23 Like the arrow key? Will that do it? Enter, okay. All
24 right. So far, so good.

25 Foster-Miller. We are a consulting engineering

1 company. We are 50 years old this year. And we do contract
2 research, as Jeff has already said, both for private
3 industry and government agencies. And in recent years,
4 we've done a great deal of work in robotics and in other
5 automated systems.

6 For example, we, just in the past year or two, we
7 have deployed, gosh, I don't know how many dozens, maybe 100
8 of these little robots here to aid our soldiers in
9 Afghanistan and Iraq. The number one thing they get used
10 for is for bomb detection and disposal, since it's obviously
11 a whole lot better idea to have one of these things handling
12 it than putting our men and women at risk.

13 These particular robots also come in other
14 configurations. They can be equipped with all kinds of
15 instrumentation. They have been used in hazardous material
16 applications, where they have both sensors and then the arm
17 that can pick things up and put it in a safe place.

18 But the real reason I'm here today is because back
19 in the seventies and eighties, Foster-Miller did an enormous
20 amount of contract research for the Bureau of Mines for
21 MSHA. Jeff and I and John Kovac hung out a lot together in
22 those days, when the Bureau had a lot of contract research
23 dollars available.

24 And I won't go through all this, but I just want
25 to give you an idea. Ventilation studies, a lot of

1 different kind of emergency work, escape hoists, guidelines
2 for metal and non-metal mines, how to use oxygen self-
3 rescuers -- that was back in the day when they were still
4 called oxygen self-rescuers. And they were too big to go on
5 the belt, and we developed a whole set of policies,
6 procedures, and suggestions on where they should be stored.

7 And finally, we did this report that I'm going to
8 talk about today, guidelines for rescue chambers. It was
9 published in 1983. And not to put Jeff on the spot, but I
10 think both MSHA and NIOSH have PFD copies of it. It's a
11 two-volume report. If you want some good bedtime reading,
12 it runs over 100 pages each, and I'm going to try to distill
13 that down to 20 minutes.

14 So as I say, my presentation is going to be a
15 quick 20-minute summary of that report. And these are the
16 various areas that I'm going to talk about. And again,
17 there's no real point in going down the list. You can see
18 it for yourself.

19 Before I get started, I just want to make one kind
20 of motherhood-and-apple-pie statement. The United States is
21 a little bit different than our colleagues in South Africa
22 and Canada and Australia in that we don't have an official
23 policy yea or nay for rescue chambers. And I think that's
24 one of the good things about this today is we get some good
25 dialogue going back and forth.

1 So what I'm going to talk about really is if
2 you're seriously thinking about implementing one or more
3 rescue chambers, here are the things that you should be
4 thinking about. And the first thing, of course, is it is
5 American policy now, and I think it always will be, that the
6 first option is to get out, okay. And rescue chambers need
7 to be part of an overall plan when getting out, for whatever
8 reason, is impossible.

9 Before I get into some real details on the
10 considerations for a rescue chamber, here is a list of the
11 general major sort of general considerations. First of all,
12 we found in our work that it is always mine-specific. And I
13 think you're going to hear me use that term several more
14 times. There is no one size fits all, literally in terms of
15 the size of it, but also in terms of where it's located, how
16 it's equipped. It really is a case-by-case situation.

17 The other thing is that for purposes of our study,
18 we assume going in that the rescue chamber should be capable
19 of being moved, not every week, but really for economics
20 more than anything else. As a mine advances it's a dynamic
21 thing, and we want to be able to reuse most of the
22 components.

23 Finally, and I'll talk about this more later --
24 well, two more things -- explosion resistance is absolutely
25 key. In fact, our design criteria were quite similar to

1 what our Australian colleague mentioned earlier. That's
2 essential. And we believe a positive air supply is
3 essential. And again, I'll talk about that a little bit
4 more later.

5 Our particular design will look somewhat similar
6 to what you've already seen, a plan view of a room-and-
7 pillar block-mining coal mine here. Kind of two ways to do
8 it. Take a crosscut, and either put in two bulkheads,
9 explosion-proof bulkheads, the advantage there being then
10 that's accessible from basically two different entryways.
11 Or, if you want to be a little more economical, you could
12 actually either, you know, drill and shoot, or continuous
13 mine or excavate a little bit just a dead-end chamber. And
14 then you could just use a single bulkhead.

15 This project really came in two parts. I'm going
16 to be reporting primarily on the second project. The first
17 one that we had before we developed these guidelines was
18 actually to design, build, and explosion-test an explosion-
19 proof bulkhead. In fact, as I'll show you in a minute,
20 because of different mine conditions, we actually designed,
21 built and tested three different types of bulkhead. And
22 once we proved that they worked, that they would survive an
23 explosion, then we developed a whole set of guidelines on
24 how to use them, how to implement them.

25 The explosion-proof bulkhead really sort of has

1 four parts. One is just the structural piece itself, but
2 that's just the beginning of the problem. Then you still
3 have to have a means of securing it to the surrounding
4 strata, the ribs, roof, and floor. You need a man-door that
5 also has to be explosion-proof. And then finally just
6 securing it there to keep it from getting blown out. That
7 takes care of it structurally, but then you also need to be
8 able to seal it to prevent noxious gases and maintain a good
9 atmosphere inside.

10 And then the rib there, with just a note to myself
11 to be sure to mention, the emphasis on all of our designs
12 was to use off-the-shelf materials wherever possible. So
13 there was really -- well, you'll see, there was very little
14 that was custom-designed. It's standard structural shapes.

15 Here's that word mine-specific again that I said
16 I'd mention again. The design that you pick, and in our
17 case we did three different ones, was really a function of
18 these two things. Okay, the size of the crosscut that
19 you're barricading, and how competent the strata is.

20 Here is the first design. This probably would be
21 the most generic of the three designs. The structural
22 elements are 12-inch-wide channels, essentially. They are
23 12 inches wide, five inches deep, and they just bolt side to
24 side to side. They are held in position -- this is for a
25 mine that has competent roof and floor, okay. They are held

1 in the floor by a trench in which you place these so-called
2 footing boxes, and grouted them in place. The reason you
3 have footing boxes is because when you get ready to relocate
4 this bulkhead somewhere else, those footing boxes are
5 grouted in, and they're going to stay. But the structural
6 element you can lift right out and move.

7 Same thing on the roof. There's a header that's
8 roof-bolted in. That in itself is not strong enough to
9 withstand the forces, so you also have turnbuckles attached
10 to roof-bolts.

11 And I have to apologize for the quality of the
12 picture; it's almost 30 years old, or 25 anyway. But this
13 is an actual picture of the assembly. All three of these
14 were tested at the Bruceton Experimental Mine, as I
15 mentioned, and actually explosions were set off. That's a
16 picture of an in-place there. That man-door is a standard
17 24-inch pressure door again, so there's really nothing in
18 this that's not off-the-shelf stuff, modular and reusable to
19 the greatest extent possible.

20 Sometimes you've got a spalling roof, or for
21 whatever reason the roof is not real secure. So this design
22 depends only on the floor, by essentially using two footing
23 boxes, okay, and then angled trusses going back there to
24 support the top half of it.

25 And in this case, these are four-by-eight box

1 beams every 27 inches. They support a couple of rails that
2 go across, and then the final element are the corrugated
3 steel panels. Now, these panels can overlap so that you've
4 got some width adjustability. And they can also overlap
5 this way, so that you've got some height adjustability.

6 Again, you've got the footings, but all the
7 structural elements can be taken down. Everything is sized
8 that it can be handled by two miners.

9 The final design is when neither the roof nor the
10 floor is very good, and this is supported entirely by the
11 ribs. This is an arch design, and this is all standard
12 components from the tunnel lining industry. This is all
13 tunnel liner plate.

14 The disadvantage to this design is, first of all,
15 you have to do some fairly serious rib-sculpting in order to
16 get enough support in there for that. And also, there's
17 much less adjustability in terms of width and height. It
18 comes in bigger modules.

19 So those are the three designs, and they all
20 worked, okay. Now, what else does it take, besides an
21 explosion-proof bulkhead?

22 First of all, and I was thrilled to hear almost
23 unanimous agreement on this, is air supply. Our gold
24 standard is a bore hole. And I don't think I need to spend
25 a lot of time on that, because the other speakers have

1 covered it very eloquently.

2 I will just say that not only does a bore hole
3 give you an air supply totally isolated from the mine, but
4 the next three items all become relatively less important in
5 terms of storage requirements in your refuge chamber if
6 you've got a bore hole, because you can get communications
7 down, you can get water down, you can get limited first aid
8 down. So to us, that's just the cat's pajamas.

9 Our second choice would be compressed air, and in
10 fact, two independent compressed air sources. Probably
11 something to think about for hard-rock mines, as speakers
12 have already said, where it's available. Not going to see a
13 lot of that in coal mines.

14 And finally, the third choices, as alluded to,
15 would be bottled air sources.

16 I'm not going to spend a lot of time on the next
17 couple of items, because again, the other speakers have
18 talked about that. I will just say that some odd little
19 things come up that need to be considered. And a good
20 example of that would be, we've got this sealed-off thing in
21 our case, where you have exposed coal on at least two sides
22 of this. So issues of methane exuding, or other stuff
23 becomes an issue, and you need to remember to keep the thing
24 ventilated. I noticed our Canadian colleague mentioned that
25 they keep their compressed air line cracked all the time for

1 that kind of reason.

2 So that brings me to the last consideration, which
3 is location methodology. If I had to do this slide over
4 again, I would have put the last item first.

5 The number one criteria, I think, when you start
6 thinking about where, if you're going to use refuge
7 chambers, where you're going to put them, is it's got to be
8 coordinated with the overall escape and rescue plan. And
9 again, several other speakers have commented on that very
10 eloquently. So I would move that to the top of the list.

11 And as part of that plan, you have to think in
12 terms of storage of other self-rescuers. There has been
13 talk today about training in terms of changing out from one
14 SCSR to another. Okay, that becomes way less troublesome,
15 obviously, if that can be done in a safe and secure
16 environment.

17 So now I will jump up to the top, and I think this
18 is the final time I'm going to mention mine-specific, but it
19 is. It really is, once again, a case-by-case basis. There
20 are some other small considerations, but they become
21 important. You really don't want to put a refuge chamber in
22 a low place in a mine where, when your pumps lose power,
23 that that part of the mine is going to flood.

24 Surface access is real important, especially for
25 us, because of the bore hole issue. I would suggest it's

1 important even if you don't have a bore hole to start with.

2 You really probably ought to think about having a rescue
3 chamber underneath someplace that you will be able to get to
4 should an emergency arise and you want to be able to reach
5 miners that are taking refuge.

6 And finally, we say within one hour of the face.
7 It should be located on the way out. We don't want to
8 encourage folks to go the wrong way. And the one hour. We
9 did a whole separate study, which time wouldn't allow me to
10 mention here, but it's also available in the literature. We
11 did some really comprehensive escape time studies with
12 miners, without using any apparatus, using SCSRs, and also
13 using a gadget that was about the size of an SCSR that was,
14 basically it was a breathing monitor. It measured
15 respiration rate, oxygen uptake, carbon dioxide generation.

16 And based on those studies, we developed
17 recommendations for what we thought one-hour travel time
18 was, depending on the scene, which again one of our other
19 speakers has already eloquently mentioned. So that needs to
20 be taken into consideration in converting one hour to a
21 distance.

22 Conclusions. I noticed everybody had a
23 conclusions page.

24 We feel like rescue chambers do have a place in an
25 overall mine escape plan. It's not to say that you have to

1 have them, but I think it's another tool that we've got in
2 the arsenal to look at. And again, it has to be done in the
3 context of the overall mine escape plan.

4 The other thing that I mentioned is that our
5 report is 1983 dated. It would be great to kind of update
6 and reevaluate that. And I feel like we're going a long way
7 on that today, especially with the international speakers,
8 and hearing about what other people are doing from around
9 the world.

10 The other thing I'd say in that respect is that
11 even in something as mundane as rescue chambers that are all
12 structural steel and explosion-proof door, there are
13 technologies that obviously do have a major impact on them.

14 Communications, power supplies have changed a lot in the 20
15 years since we did this report. Positioning technology,
16 being able to locate people is so much better. And drilling
17 technology has gotten a lot better, which impacts being able
18 to get in and rescue them.

19 And finally, just for the mechanics of the system
20 itself, I think we've got improved materials, whether it's
21 lighter-weight alloys or composites, and improved sealants
22 and adhesives to seal off the perimeter of the bulkhead.

23 So I thank you for the attention. It's been a
24 pleasure to be here today.

25 (Applause.)

1 MR. KRAVITZ: Okay, our next speaker isn't here
2 today, he's in Kentucky. And by the goodness of our
3 technology hopefully, we'll see if he's there.

4 Bud, are you there?

5 MS. MEYER: Well, actually it's Janet Meyer who's
6 here. Bud has a very sore throat, and I'm going to be
7 talking for him.

8 MR. KRAVITZ: Okay. Well, Bud couldn't be
9 participating in the conference due to surgery. And now
10 Janet, who I hear is a radio announcer, is going to take
11 over for him. So I think it's a good choice.

12 Bud Meyer lives in Frankfort, Kentucky with his
13 wife, Janet. He has over 50 years of experience designing
14 rockets for the Air Force, DOD, and NASA. So where Ken
15 Sproul couldn't find a rocket scientist, I found one.

16 (Laughter.)

17 MR. KRAVITZ: A real one. During that time he
18 served as Battalion Chief on a northern California volunteer
19 fire department, involved in mountain search and rescue
20 before GPS. And that's interesting.

21 He is a current member of the International
22 Association of Fire Chiefs, and acts as an advisor to the
23 Volunteer Fire Departments of Kentucky. He founded, as
24 Chairman of the Donald C. Hogate Foundation, to provide and
25 champion outdoor recreation facilities for the physically

1 and mentally challenged.

2 He could not be here today, as I said, because of
3 surgery. And we will hear his talk, and I will be changing
4 the slides. When you're ready to change slides, just let me
5 know, and I'll do it as you see fit.

6 Okay, Janet, you're on.

7 MS. MEYER: Well, thank you. I want to say hello
8 to all the distinguished panel members and guests, and offer
9 you a very good afternoon from here in Frankfort, Kentucky.
10 We really do appreciate this opportunity to be part of this
11 workshop.

12 Because Bud is not able to speak very well at the
13 moment, I'm going to try to voice some of his words.
14 However, in the interest of time, as well as my hesitations
15 with some of this, we're going to show you the slides that
16 are going to be on MSHA's website, so there won't be a great
17 deal of need to go over much on the slides themselves.
18 You'll be able to access them yourselves later. And if you
19 have any questions at all, you can, of course, call Bud in a
20 day or two. And you can also email him with any questions
21 you might have. He can handle email at any point. So he'll
22 be glad to talk with you electronically.

23 Slide one. This is simply an introduction to the
24 presentation. Bud has taken an integrated systems approach
25 to the miner safety issue, and he's outlined a pilot project

1 concept that involves technologies that encompass high- and
2 low-tech approaches.

3 Now, slide two names the project, PPFIT.

4 Slide three lists the three primary PPFIT
5 missions.

6 On slide four we introduce the elements of PPFIT.

7 And I hope we did get your attention.

8 MR. KRAVITZ: Yes, I think you did.

9 MS. MEYER: Slide five suggests the disciplines to
10 be included on the team effort. Any successful pilot
11 project will call for a balanced mix of intellectual
12 capital, strong leadership, specific marching orders, money,
13 and perhaps some temporary waivers of regulations that may
14 unintentionally set up institutional barriers to new
15 technology.

16 Slide six shows the only marching order needed.

17 Slide seven lists potential funding streams. Any
18 technical talent will need sustainable funding.

19 Slide eight lists the priorities for the team
20 action. And these are the problems for which we're seeking
21 a solution.

22 Slide nine addresses the first listed priority.

23 Now, early detection of the known hazards can actually
24 provide time to escape those hazards. And we think that
25 Argonne may have the answer with their miniature sensors

1 that can drive an audible and strobe alarm.

2 Slide 10 suggests that particular leaders arrange
3 to visit the various sites of safe refuge, to study them,
4 see how they work, and report their findings to the team.

5 Slide 11 names two experts in the field of
6 extended breathing air supplies.

7 And slides 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, and 17 show where
8 this technology is embedded in government and private
9 sectors. Now, there are viable solutions available, and a
10 working prototype can be designed, built, and installed in a
11 test-bed mine for evaluation in a relatively short period of
12 time.

13 Slides 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, and 23 touch on Dr.
14 Chuck Jorgensen's work at NASA to develop improved
15 communications through converting thoughts to digital
16 signals. Now, this holds great promise for those who must
17 work underground, and we are asking the panel to contact Dr.
18 Jorgensen to learn more about his exciting new technology.

19 Slides 24 and 25 introduce potential equipment to
20 allow seeing through smoke. And we're told the chances of
21 successful escape would be greatly improved if it were
22 possible to both see through smoke and breathe for at least
23 an hour.

24 During the war in Vietnam a new technology was
25 developed and has been improved since that time called FLIR.

1 That stands for forward-looking infrared. Now, here at ASI
2 we think we can make that small enough to fit inside the
3 face piece, as shown there, with a compass aid in escaping
4 those hazardous situations.

5 Slide 26 discusses new technologies for locating
6 personnel underground.

7 Slide 27 suggests that we invoke a non-traditional
8 training method to deliver the all-important training that's
9 associated with the process and safety.

10 Slide 28, ladies and gentleman, this is a quote
11 500 years old showing the difficulty involved in invoking
12 enthusiasm for change. "If you try something new, there
13 will be many aginners." But as Larry the table guy says, we
14 need to get her done.

15 And with slide 29, we thank you very much for
16 allowing us to present this. And as I said, this is a very,
17 very brief overview of these items. And you can access
18 these slides on the MSHA website, and get in touch with Bud
19 either by email or telephone in a couple of days, and he
20 would be glad to talk with you more about these items.

21 So now we hope we've kept you right back on your
22 schedule. And we thank you for this opportunity.

23 MR. KRAVITZ: Okay, well, thank you, Janet. And
24 tell Bud that we hope he feels better. And maybe we'll get
25 to see him in person.

1 MS. MEYER: Thank you. He'd like that.

2 MR. KRAVITZ: Okay. Thank you very much.

3 (Applause.)

4 MR. KRAVITZ: What attracted me about that concept
5 was it really brings together a systems approach. And
6 basically, he's the only one who wrote to us talking about
7 the whole system of actually escape through smoke using new
8 technology. And there's a lot to gain from looking at what
9 he has to offer. So his forte is actually bringing people
10 together to get jobs done.

11 Okay. The last speaker in this session is Kelvin
12 Wu. Kelvin is known to many of us. He's the Dam Safety
13 Officer for DOL, Acting Chief for the Pittsburgh Safety and
14 Health Technology Center for Mine Safety and Health
15 Administration in Pittsburgh. He received his MS and PhD
16 Degrees in Mining Engineering from the University of
17 Wisconsin. He's a registered professional engineer and land
18 surveyor in Pennsylvania.

19 Dr. Wu has taught as an adjunct professor in the
20 Mining Engineering Department at the University of
21 Pittsburgh, and he's currently teaching as an adjunct
22 professor at WDU. He has served SME as Chair and member of
23 the board of directors in Pittsburgh section, has been a
24 Coal Division representative on the Book Publishing
25 Committee.

1 He is currently a member of the Construction
2 Materials Aggregates Committee, a program chair for SME
3 2007, a member-at-large for the Professional Registration
4 Committee, a member of the Coal and Energy Division Award
5 Committees, Mining Engineering Committee, Program Committee
6 for Surface Mining, and a member of the Health and Safety
7 Committee. A mouthful.

8 He has worked extensively in both coal and
9 metal/nonmetal in the areas of tailings, dam safety,
10 geotechnical engineering, involving high wall, open-pit
11 stability, mining adjacent to underwater bodies, bulkheads,
12 all roads and structure safety.

13 Please welcome Kelvin Wu.

14 (Applause.)

15 MR. WU: Thank you, Jeff. Good afternoon, ladies
16 and gentlemen. I lost my voice somehow a little bit since
17 last week. Just gradually getting it back, so my voice is
18 broke up.

19 The last one for this panel is very difficult.
20 Low tech all being finished. High tech we don't understand.
21 So it's a little bit difficult, but I'll try. Take a
22 different approach on the problem.

23 This particular presentation, what we're trying to
24 brainstorm what we can do, based on the assurance we have
25 through different incidents. And though I have Mr. Mark

1 Skiles, Director, and Richard Allwes and Terry Taylor in the
2 audience, and they all try to get our thoughts together to
3 put this presentation, so the comments are conceptual.

4 Now, we say, as all the previous speakers pointed
5 out, if there's incidents happen underground, no matter it's
6 coal or metal, if you can get out the best way, the safest
7 way is just exit, get out safely. That's the first thing
8 you do. Don't even think about stay down there.

9 Now, so this morning's presentation on the
10 communication, training, and escape plans, all those things,
11 lifelines, all most important. Get the people out of the
12 mine. If there's a fire, you try to fight the fire. If out
13 of control, get out. If you're going to have explosion, you
14 didn't get hurt bad enough you can get out, get out. And
15 there's flooding, like Quecreek's incident, actually 1980
16 the Jefferson Island incidents -- how many in audience
17 remember Jefferson Island? Still a lot of people. Jeff,
18 you were there, you didn't raise your hand.

19 Now, all those incidents, the Jefferson Island and
20 the Quecreek, only the problem is when people -- Jefferson
21 Island incidents, everybody exited safely, 57 miners.
22 Quecreek unfortunately trapped, but fortunately enough, they
23 all safe.

24 Now, the training is so important. And when I
25 talk to the students, I say, well, regulations. Regulations

1 apply both on coal and metal on escape routes. People walk
2 out of emergency escape, that's the most try thing to do,
3 perhaps most important thing to do. To familiarize yourself
4 how to get out. So all I try to emphasize is, if anything
5 happens underground, we get out.

6 This panel, we're talking about refuge chambers,
7 refuge bay, whatever the term we use; that's a last resort.

8 That's only when you cannot get out, and there's something
9 there for added safety, and give some chances.

10 So we thought we use 1500 feet, but at a distance
11 it's not really that important. I was trying to last, at a
12 meeting, annual meeting, Professor Andrzej Wala of the
13 University of Kentucky, he present paper to publish as a
14 model study for the fire and the smoke promulgations. And
15 those are the research work he done, can be utilized for
16 this type of work, for future development.

17 We said in here that the distance based on the
18 low-zero visibilities, the 50-percent supply, that's only
19 for the 60 minutes, that's CSR, as other speakers stated,
20 entry heights, all the other things, he's going to have a
21 problem with the people walking out. Now, the distance they
22 travel under the high stress. If he's in a coal mine, the
23 coal seam is lower than five feet, you're going to reduce
24 more, as far as travel concern.

25 So we set up with those things, and we said, well,

1 provide a minimum, you know, thoughts, 72 hours supplies, if
2 you get trapped. Once you get trapped, it's 72 hours.

3 Well, like this morning's presentation by John Radomsky on
4 the Mexico incidents, that's another couple months. And the
5 things, we thought it was 72 hours, it probably is something
6 a minimum, based on the other incidents.

7 Now, when we think about this thing here, we are
8 not only talking about it only by explosion, we're also
9 thinking about water, the inundation problems. And the
10 accident cuts through. This is happening. It's the same,
11 getting more and more. The things like Quecreek, hope
12 that's the last one, most likely it probably won't be.

13 So if you're doing this refuge chamber thing,
14 we'll also want to design, thinking about taking that into
15 consideration, can hold it for high water pressures.

16 So we look on three different type, the possible
17 refuge chambers, permanent, temporary, and portable. When
18 we talk about permanent ones, I was very glad, many speaker
19 by now on the panels, I personally had no contact before,
20 and so we didn't collaborate or anything. The talk, the
21 thought was along the same line.

22 This is just based on the research in talking
23 about under different conditions, and how the individual can
24 travel. And that SCSR, how much they can supply.

25 Now, permanent chamber. We suggest the permanent

1 chamber. And Randy, you put in first. So I'll beat you on
2 that one. You're installing the main travelway and
3 escapeways. Permanent bore hole would be provided. We're
4 talking about that's another thing. If it's a permanent one
5 with one bore hole in the chamber.

6 There's two reasons, a couple reasons. Pressure
7 is number one. Most speakers were talking about, based on
8 experience they were talking about some of the cases. And
9 there's other important things, if we can keep it in the
10 positive pressures. We know we build bulkhead, no matter
11 how we build it, it's not going to be able to seal. You've
12 got high pressure, high positive pressure. We can keep the
13 toxic gas out from the bulkheads. So keep that area safe
14 and continual fresh air. That is probably most important
15 ones.

16 Now we can continue to supply air supply and
17 communications. Natural air is going to be a problem for
18 the companies. If you're going to drill the holes, we know
19 that. You've got to get surface rights, state regulation
20 requirements. You know, you can keep the hole open or not.

21 There's a lot of other things that we're not discussing
22 here. What you're talking about is a conceptual thing we're
23 thinking about, how to deal with this problem.

24 Now, there's one more thing is more important on
25 the survey portion. Survey portion. Now, I'm going to go

1 for the next one, the temporary chamber. The temporary
2 chamber is going to put it close to the working area, with
3 our thought is in active mining areas. But that will be no
4 bore holes. You only provide oxygen tank, whatever needed
5 in there. Now you can put air lines in, all those things.
6 But we thought well, if there is an incident, explosion,
7 chances are that air lines, water line, all those are going
8 to get cut off. And we got to have independent supplies.
9 That is our thoughts.

10 But I say the survey was extremely important for
11 temporary ones. If we put temporary ones in the mine, that
12 location has to be very accurately surveyed. The reason
13 Quecreek is best example, all the things talking about it is
14 that surveyor used the GPS system, while always contributed
15 the credits to the underground survey crew. They did the
16 best survey, and provided the points, the longitude, the
17 latitude. And so on the surface he used GPS, anybody can
18 locate that points.

19 So we know if it's temporary, if something
20 happens, people in that refuge chamber, we know, as the
21 other speaker talking about it knew, the drilling equipment,
22 everything is so advanced, we can have high-speed drilling.
23 We can drill into that chamber and provide fresh air. But
24 if the location surveyor was not accurate, we're not going
25 to be able to do it. So that survey becomes an extremely

1 important thing, the accuracy.

2 The third time we're talking about is the portable
3 chambers; that is, removable. And the most we got some
4 picture later to show on the market, where the most of them
5 are not fire explosion-proof. And, Randy, your test is fire
6 explosion-proof. On the market, most of them found it was
7 not.

8 So this concept we're talking about it being a
9 room and pillar operation. Say, well, we'll cut right into
10 the pillars, into established chambers. Now, here I want to
11 talk about, he tried to work with, you got the wall and the
12 use of his knowledge on the model study to determine what's
13 the best place to place those temporary chambers and the
14 permanent chambers. And Professor Andrzej Wala was very
15 interested to do this, so maybe more things can be developed
16 in the future to utilize his model.

17 Light support system in the chamber which are
18 required to be in there, to be furnished. Not much
19 difference was with other speakers. Bore holes is the
20 permanent ones. And the other things we needed.

21 Now, we're talking about a requirement on the
22 regulation at the present time, and CFR 75.1500 do have coal
23 refuge chambers requirements. And some of those provisions
24 is quite in detail, quite in detail. It's not mandated, but
25 if you do put a refuge chamber, there's a requirement.

1 Metal/nonmetal, 57.1105(2). Joy, is that correct
2 one? They require the provisions you have to have.
3 Compressor air line issues gives different type of problems.
4 This is two incidents occurred in Ontario, Manitoba. They
5 had problems.

6 Permanent chamber, we're talking about. That was
7 interesting because, Randy, you're talking about double
8 bulkheads, we're talking about double bulkheads. And,
9 Randy, we never met before, right? We never talked about
10 it.

11 MR. BERRY: It's all been a set-up.

12 MR. WU: I thought it was the same thought
13 process. So is the locator large enough to accommodate all
14 the miner in the areas.

15 Now, we say the designs should resist minimum 80
16 psi over-pressure. And Mr. Richard Elms joined us recently;
17 he's from Army Corps of Engineers. So they have some other
18 thoughts. So that's adding things to our work.

19 And last week I saw on the Discovery Channels
20 about hurricanes, and the University of Texas. And they
21 shoot these air guns, shoot these two-by-four stud in the
22 hurricane. Anybody saw that segments? On the brick walls,
23 they shoot right through it.

24 What we're talking about is, the projectors, when
25 you have an explosion, in the abandoned area you have a lot

1 of debris. When those things being through at a high
2 velocities, there's a lot of other things could happen.

3 Inundation hazards. Now we said well, this
4 bulkhead has the design it can hold minimum 100-foot water.

5 And that won't be a surprise, because we have so many mines
6 right now being abandoned, and those was flooded. Most of
7 those mines are flooded.

8 Now, when mining adjacent mines, adjacent
9 properties, that that risk always exists.

10 Now, we say this bulkhead has to be able to
11 survive initial and secondary explosions. God forbid you
12 never have a secondary explosion. But we know experience
13 tells us it happens.

14 The concrete design for explosion as a certain
15 requirement, different type of concrete for water invasion
16 to coal. Foundation investigations. I was glad to hear
17 Randy talking about prepared foundations. That is extremely
18 important elements.

19 How to anchor into the stratus. Whether we need a
20 grout curtain or not. Those are things that's in the
21 thinking process, do we need them for the bulkhead design.
22 That we have them evolving mining industry, doing a lot on
23 bulkhead designs, to separate mines.

24 We're going to do this to try to reduce
25 permeabilities. We say on both sides the bulkheads should

1 be supported, supplement support, to reduce chances for the
2 convergence on the bulkhead. So reduce the bulkhead subject
3 to the high stress. Other supplementary roof support should
4 be provided.

5 Under the doors. It has to be airtight doors,
6 explosion-proof. So we're looking through what is available
7 on the market. Fire rate, that has to be looked at. Rock
8 anchor, that has to be taken care of.

9 We need a construction plan and specifications.
10 We need a design first, then we need a construction plan and
11 specifications, material specifications. This seems so
12 serious, you better make sure, we better make sure the
13 material is what your design plan calls for.

14 And the most important we thought, those things
15 has to be certified, that type of structure has to be
16 certified. All the material testing during the construction
17 has to be applicable to ASTM standards. Inspection by the
18 contractors, all MSHA personnel whenever it's available,
19 when it's very doubtful they can do that. It should be the
20 mining industry's responsibility in this part, because
21 that's a daily operation, so it should be checked so
22 frequently, particularly during the construction period, for
23 quality control.

24 You can spend a lot of money to design, and by the
25 end of the construction did not build a quality design plan,

1 and everything is of no use basically.

2 Now, this is just talking about all the different
3 designs in our mine, what we thought, and it can be done.
4 You have this bulkhead with tight door, with bore hole
5 predrilled, predrilled. As you can see, the bulkhead, and
6 this is three-foot doors, this is the temporary ones,
7 temporary ones without bore holes. But as I mentioned, we
8 needed the survey of this location extremely careful, be
9 accurate. So if incidents happens, the people is in here.
10 Whatever method we're going to have to find the people is in
11 this chamber. We know the location, and we can do the high-
12 speed drilling, we can reach them in very short time.

13 This is not just different ways we're thinking of
14 steel layout, how we're going to construct this bulkhead.
15 This is on the market. This is the ones they're using on
16 the offshore drilling platform, or shipping industry use for
17 the high-pressure doors. And those doors are reusable. So
18 they use this, you know, when the area section is abandoned,
19 those should be retreated, and for the next location it's
20 for reuse. Those are quite expensive. Those can hold for
21 high water pressure.

22 The following just all different picture which
23 show what the person time in the mine, you know, has been
24 done. Has been done in contact grouting. This is the ones
25 in Canada. As you can see, because it is potash mine, at a

1 fire where there's no explosion, the fire is far away. It
2 cannot be close. If it close, all those corridors would not
3 going to be closed.

4 Now, for their purpose, it didn't serve
5 adequately. Portable ones. We thought the portables would
6 be mentioned because in underground conditions, if I have
7 isolated area for certain construction crews and doing work
8 in separate main areas, maybe portable ones would be
9 suitable for them in case for any unforeseeable events.

10 Through a search on the market, find a different
11 type portable chambers. But would you believe all those is
12 not fire explosion-proof. But they have all the
13 specification capacities and all the detail in their
14 brochure, so I just very quickly went through those. Those
15 are available on the market today, even the portable ones.

16 So that's basically quickly the brief, gives the
17 thoughts, what we're thinking about, the concepts. Things
18 can be done. There's a lot of work still need to be done.
19 And hopefully that can serve the purpose of what we're
20 talking about today, to save lives.

21 Thanks.

22 (Applause.)

23 MR. KRAVITZ: Okay, let's take a 15-minute break.

24 We'll be back about 2:25.

25 (Whereupon, a short recess was taken.)

1 MR. FINFINGER: Okay, I'd like to start the
2 presentation forward. We'll be getting presentation from
3 various manufacturers, and they'll be talking about what is
4 currently available in the market in terms of this topic
5 we're covering today.

6 The first presentation will be given by Ed
7 Roscioli from ChemBio Shelter. Ed is the CEO of ChemBio
8 Shelter of Allentown, PA. Over the last three years he
9 designed and produced emergency shelters for use by the U.S.
10 military to protect troops from chemical and biological
11 warfare agents. In designing chemical bio-shelter, Roscioli
12 applied principles learned during 30 years of work at
13 nuclear power plants.

14 The shelter generates pure oxygen from a solid
15 chemical, and scrubs carbon dioxide and carbon monoxide from
16 the atmosphere.

17 Yes, Ed, are you here? And by the way, these
18 presentations are 10 minutes each. Please try to stick to
19 that time.

20 MR. ROSCIOLI: Thank you, Gunnar.

21 As Gunnar mentioned, I was in the nuclear power
22 industry for about 30 years, and I worked at a lot of the
23 different power plants in the United States. That just
24 means that I lived in some godawful places.

25 It turns out one of them, I remember distinctly,

1 was Edwin I. Hatch Plant near Vidalia, Georgia. And I was
2 going down there for the first time, I'd never been there
3 before. And I asked one of my colleagues, because he had
4 been there for a couple years at a previous assignment. I
5 said, what's it like down there in southern Georgia?

6 And he says, well, let me put it to you this way.

7 If my doctor told me I had six months to live, I'd go live
8 in Vidalia, Georgia. I said whoa, it must be really nice
9 there. He said, well, I don't know if I'd call it nice,
10 but that six months would seem like 20 years.

11 (Laughter.)

12 MR. ROSCIOLI: The tragedies and Sago and Alma in
13 January of this year jolted us, and awakened us to the
14 dangers that miners face every day. We share the grief the
15 families of the victims have, and we extend our sympathies
16 to them.

17 Now let's share our collective wisdom, and extend
18 the solution to all the miners that take these risks to
19 provide these resources to us.

20 I've worked, for the past three and a half years,
21 on a ChemBio Shelter. Really it was designed in concert
22 with the U.S. military to protect the war fighter from
23 chemical and biological warfare agents. And this particular
24 shelter, you can actually keep someone hermetically sealed
25 in it for extended periods of time: four days, seven days,

1 10 days, if you have enough of the chemicals.

2 If we had anticipated the usefulness of this
3 shelter prior to January 2, we're confident that we could
4 have prevented these tragedies. We could have given them
5 air, food, water for 96 hours or more. And that was enough
6 time for them to be rescued.

7 That's why we're working diligently and
8 continuously to provide the most reliable, economic, and
9 technologically advanced way of providing a safe haven for
10 these trapped miners.

11 An essential part of our overall strategy was to
12 partner with an experienced, well-respected emergency
13 shelter manufacturer. Zumro is that manufacturer. They've
14 been supplying shelters to emergency service personnel for
15 more than 18 years now, and they stand out in the industry
16 for rugged durability, design flexibility. And they use a
17 low-pressure air beam construction, and that allows it to be
18 rapidly deployed. And you'll see a little later in the
19 slide show, we have an actual video embedded in there of one
20 of our shelters being deployed.

21 We take pride in having been selected by the
22 Department of Defense to take part in an \$8 million testing
23 program. And this was to find viable methods and systems
24 for protecting the military from chemical, biological, and
25 radiological warfare agents. This testing was done by the

1 Joint Program Executive Office for Chemical and Biological
2 Defense just this past December.

3 There was a five-day extensive test, and during
4 that test they actually subjected our shelter to a chemical
5 warfare agent simulant. And our shelter did not allow any
6 of that simulant to go through its wall. And they had
7 absorbent tubes inside to monitor it for the entire duration
8 of the test, and they had no detectable indication of any
9 chemical inside the shelter.

10 As part of the testing program, they also checked
11 out our decontamination unit and the air lock and mortar
12 lock for providing transition between the decontamination
13 unit and our toxic-free area, which is the hermetically-
14 sealed shelter.

15 On February 8 of this year, we had the opportunity
16 to demonstrate the shelter to a group of industry regulators
17 and mining executives at the experimental coal mine in
18 Bruceton, Pennsylvania. We got strong praise from that, and
19 we also received some insightful comments. We took these
20 comments seriously, and we made some engineering changes
21 that have made the system even more suitable for the mining
22 industry.

23 Today we feel confident that we have the best
24 solution for giving trapped miners a safe haven where they
25 can survive until help arrives.

1 As we can see from the comments and discussions
2 this morning, a mine rescue shelter meets a critical need.
3 It provides a safe haven for miners that cannot escape. It
4 assures that they have a safe haven with a life-sustaining
5 supply of air when, where, and for how long they need it.

6 In the event of an emergency situation -- for
7 example, an explosion, fire, flaps, poisonous gas -- the
8 first line of defense is always to exit the mine. And there
9 needs to be a concise escape decision-making process. The
10 last thing we want or need is to have miners staying in the
11 mine that could have safely escaped.

12 But we also do not want miners making panicked
13 attempts to escape that lead to disastrous results when it
14 is not safe, or impossible to exit the mine, these attempts
15 that could be prompted by the belief that barricading will
16 lead to certain death. The availability of a viable safe
17 haven, a rescue shelter, gives them another reasonable
18 option. It removes that sense of panic, and helps give them
19 presence of mind to make the right decision.

20 It can also do a few other things. It can give
21 them a place to rest, collect their thoughts, treat their
22 injuries, and then move to evacuate or wait for help. Also,
23 it gives them a known location, a place where the rescue
24 teams can focus their efforts.

25 As I mentioned, there's a rapid deployment due to

1 the air beams. We're going to see the video now. It's
2 about a 43-second video of our shelter that's being deployed
3 at the MSHA Academy in Beckley, West Virginia just four
4 weeks ago today.

5 (Video played.)

6 MR. ROSCIOLI: Okay. Notice when that shelter was
7 deploying, no one had to touch it. You just open an air
8 valve, and it automatically sets itself up.

9 This is part of our ease of operation. To deploy
10 the unit, you just open the panel, and pull the door
11 release. You open the first valve, and that deploys and
12 fills the shelter with fresh, clean air. Then you open the
13 second valve, and that lifts the shelter to the available
14 height of the mine seam automatically. The door release and
15 the valves are clearly marked, they are color-coded, and
16 they are ordered from right to left, just like we read.

17 Once deployed, the miners simply enter the shelter
18 through the air lock. Then once inside, they start the air-
19 processing system, which maintains the breathable air supply
20 by generating oxygen, removing carbon dioxide, carbon
21 monoxide, and other pollutants from the air.

22 The durability of this system, it's a rugged and
23 durable shelter material, and it's built to withstand the
24 mine environment. It can withstand dust, falling debris,
25 humidity, and it also can withstand multiple deployment,

1 redeployment within the mine to ensure that it is ready and
2 available when needed.

3 As previously mentioned, the ChemBio Shelter was
4 designed and developed to meet the demanding military
5 standards for protecting combat troops from the life-
6 threatening effects of chemical and biological warfare
7 agents. It has undergone extensive testing by the U.S.
8 Department of Defense.

9 This revolutionary and ruggedly-constructed
10 shelter provides an impermeable barrier from the life-
11 threatening atmosphere created by high concentrations of
12 carbon monoxide and other toxic gases. It is flame-
13 retardant. It meets UL 94-V0, which is the highest level of
14 flame retardancy that Underwriters Lab has. It is puncture-
15 and tear-resistant. I have some samples of the material.
16 If you see me afterwards, you can try to rip it. And unless
17 you're extremely strong, I don't think you're going to be
18 able to.

19 And unlike some of the other concepts on the
20 market, our shelter is available now. We have production
21 capacity that we can quickly gear up to meet the need. We
22 have plants in place, and we have equipment and inventory in
23 store right now.

24 This is a quick, just a diagram of the shelter
25 itself. It's attached directly to the heavy-duty cart that

1 it comes in. Again, the duration and the other issues such
2 as power, we don't need power to run this system.
3 Absolutely totally power-free. The only power in the whole
4 system are little lithium batteries in the detectors that
5 last two years, and they are intrinsically safe. There is
6 absolutely no other power to run this whole system.

7 The shelf life you see is in terms of years. It's
8 air being deployed. These are the detectors. We have one
9 for carbon monoxide, carbon dioxide, and oxygen, and they
10 can measure the air both inside the shelter and outside the
11 shelter while the people are still inside.

12 So in summary, the long-term air supply we can
13 provide, 96 hours or even longer. It's mobile, because it's
14 on a skid-mounted cart, so they can move it along. And the
15 cart is only 20 inches high, for those low coal mines. It
16 can be rapidly deployed, and it has absolutely no power
17 requirements. And it's available now.

18 Thank you.

19 (Applause.)

20 MR. FINFINGER: Okay. I think reading CVs are
21 included in the 10 minutes. Somebody gave me a CV three
22 pages long. That person needs to make a choice. Either I
23 read the whole CV, or --

24 (Laughter.)

25 MR. FINFINGER: -- the whole presentation.

1 Okay, the next speaker is Mr. David Baines from
2 the O.C. Lugo Company.

3 VOICE: Excuse me. I asked Mr. Kravitz for time.
4 I wanted to address a comment that was made in the last
5 panel.

6 MR. KRAVITZ: We're going to get at the end --

7 VOICE: Jeff, this is very important. It casts
8 very bad light on our company, and some people here are on
9 very thin ice by making statements that they have made.

10 MR. KRAVITZ: Well, you'll get a chance to correct
11 it at the end, after the last panel.

12 VOICE: All of these people, this is a science
13 academy, Jeff. We come here for truth. We come here
14 because we want to hear the facts of material that is being
15 presented.

16 Whenever somebody makes a statement that over 100
17 people died because they couldn't get our chambers opened,
18 that is not true. It never happened. And what we want to
19 know is the source of the information, what mine it
20 happened, and when.

21 MR. FINFINGER: Look, I'd like to suggest we
22 handle this issue in the question-and-answer session at the
23 end of the day.

24 VOICE: That would be fine. I just want all of
25 you to know that it did not happen. If 100 people died, we

1 as the manufacturer would certainly be notified. We have
2 never been notified of 100 deaths because our unit was not
3 able to be opened.

4 Mr. Oberholzer, I don't know if he is still here,
5 but I would definitely like to know what mine it happened
6 at, and when.

7 MR. FINFINGER: Okay, we'll continue our
8 discussion right at the end. It's good to have good
9 questions like this, it keeps us awake.

10 All right, let's continue. The next presentation
11 is from David Baines. He is Sales and Marketing Director of
12 Molecular Products, Ltd. in UK, a supplier of CO2-absorbent
13 materials, chemical oxygen generators, and filter media for
14 confined space and collective protection.

15 David has over 20 years' experience in sales and
16 marketing of industrial products to the chemical,
17 pharmaceutical, petrochemical, industrial suppliers of
18 instrumentation equipment which are used in safety emissions
19 monitoring, patient protection, and process control.

20 MR. BAINES: Good afternoon, ladies and gentlemen.
21 Why am I here? Well, this is one of the reasons why I'm
22 here. The company, Molecular Products, provides a number of
23 technologies that are used in confined spaces. And an
24 example of that confined space would, of course, be a
25 military submarine.

1 The company has three capabilities that I want to
2 talk to you today about, and then apply them to your
3 application within the mine industry. The first of those is
4 it makes gas filtration products, such as CO absorber, H2S
5 scrubbing materials, and other materials that absorb CO2 in
6 the military application that I've just talked about. There
7 are, of course, applications in industry and environment, as
8 well, for those filtration products.

9 The second capability is the production of
10 chemically-generated oxygen. Whether this is used in the
11 confined space of a military submarine, or whether it's in
12 the health care industry in the form of a portable can of
13 oxygen that is provided for emergency patient care. And
14 indeed, in confined spaces we have an instrument that I'm
15 going to talk to you more about as well later.

16 The company manufactures CO2 removal devices, many
17 of these being used in breathing circuits in medical
18 applications, but also in military diving sets, and indeed
19 in breathing sets which are used in parts of rescue
20 operations as parts of mining applications.

21 So those are the three capabilities that I wanted
22 to talk to you about.

23 The company has identified that the combination of
24 these technologies can be used in mine refuges and safe
25 havens, and indeed in civilian bunkers or safe havens, as

1 well.

2 Our customers tend to be shelter designers and
3 builders, and indeed, shelter operators. So we are able,
4 then, to combine the chemical oxygen generation with CO2
5 removal in such environments as you've been discussing this
6 afternoon in those shelters. It is an independent supply of
7 oxygen that we're providing, so it is not relying on
8 compressed air being supplied. It is capable of supplying
9 over-pressure within the confined envelope that is defined.

10 And it also scrubs out the carbon dioxide which is exhaled
11 from the inhabitants of the confined space. And of course,
12 it is the CO2 that gets you first, not the lack of oxygen.

13 So we've taken these technologies, and put them
14 into a portable atmosphere control unit so it can be used in
15 a confined space, or safe haven. This unit here is going to
16 be able to monitor its environment using electrochemical and
17 infrared sensors. It scrubs the atmosphere for a defined
18 number of people; in this case, the unit has been defined
19 for four people for 24 hours, in a 32-meter-cube
20 environment. But in fact, it can be scaled up to be used in
21 any defined space, it just has to be specified.

22 The unit that's crawling through behind us is
23 built up of a CO2 absorber unit, which is on the base of the
24 instrument. It is there with its own self-powered unit
25 capable of functioning for 24 hours non-stop, scrubbing out

1 the environment in the defined space that I've used for this
2 example. Indeed, multiple CO2 scrubbers can be stacked one
3 on top of the other to provide increased capacity for larger
4 defined environments. And the period of 12 hours doesn't
5 limit the instrument, because you can exchange these units.

6 They're consumable units, so you would have a store of them
7 sufficient for the defined period of time you wish to
8 sustain people.

9 You also, in the unit, then provide a self-
10 contained oxygen-generation unit which sits at the top of
11 the device. The fan system drawing the air from the
12 environment through the CO2 scrubber then passes by the
13 self-contained oxygen-generation devices, which will
14 produce, according to the oxygen level environment, further
15 oxygen to maintain a 21-percent oxygen environment within
16 the defined space. These are automatically controlled, and
17 can be fired off by the machine themselves to provide that
18 21-percent oxygen atmosphere. And it also enables you to
19 exchange these units and put in consumable supplies for the
20 defined period that you set out to maintain the people for.

21 It also has an oxygen readout system, and monitors
22 the CO2 automatically, and displays that on the unit. And
23 as you can see, it's a fairly compact unit in its own right.

24 (Applause.)

25 MR. FINFINGER: He saved us seven minutes. And a

1 short CV. Well done.

2 Okay. The next presentation will be given by Mr.
3 Ian Houlison from Phoenix First Response. Ian started in
4 mining in 1975. He worked at the various places. He has
5 experience from Australia and United States. He worked at
6 New South Wales Mine Rescue Services, Queensland Mine Rescue
7 Services, Phoenix First Response as a Manager in Glassport.
8 And in 2004 he was appointed as Safety Director.

9 He's certified as mine rescue instructor and
10 operator, police rescue operator, ambulance officer. As I
11 read this through, I feel myself very safe here.

12 (Laughter.)

13 MR. FINFINGER: And Ian has been a presenter for
14 various papers on mine rescue and mine inertization
15 throughout Australia and U.S. Ian.

16 MR. HOULISON: Thank you for that sterling
17 introduction.

18 Phoenix First Response and Mine Emergency Shelters
19 and Chambers came as a result of a lot of effort, through a
20 lot of people. Essentially, it was driven predominantly by
21 underground emergencies. And each individual human being
22 has that essence, being the flight-or-fight response, what
23 do I do.

24 I'm trying to put you in an emergency situation of
25 where you're sitting, where a fire has broken out, an

1 explosion has occurred, or whatever. And your first thought
2 is what do I do. So the non-trained person, his reaction
3 is, who can help me. Who is around who is going to be able
4 to help me?

5 Previous speakers have identified the fact that we
6 need to have a leader that comes forward. A trained
7 response, timely and rapid intervention, will give us the
8 early resolve, so that people can be retrieved from within
9 the coal mine fairly rapidly.

10 Egress from the mine are the primary or secondary
11 escape routes. Which one is available to me? Which is the
12 best for me to escape through? Or do I stay underground for
13 rescue or retrieval? What's the best possible protection?
14 And this process becomes involved, because as you go to the
15 next level, then these same questions start to arise.

16 In emergencies, it generally can be divided into
17 three areas: self-escape, which is predominantly the best
18 way of getting out of the mine, where people don their self-
19 rescuer and escape with little or no injury and exiting the
20 mine with the potential use of SCSRs if it's required.

21 The aided escape is often overlooked. An aided
22 escape really is about mine workers who are injured or may
23 be assisted by fellow workers exiting the mine, or
24 retreating to a place of safety. Those people who are
25 retreating to that place of safety, or your rescue chamber

1 or rescue bay, or whatever you choose to call it, can then
2 be retrieved from underground by rescue teams.

3 The mine's rescue philosophy then comes about by
4 the historical involvement of the entry into the affected
5 mine by trained personnel wearing appropriate devices to
6 retrieve injured or trapped mine workers. This may also
7 involve retrieval from that place of safety, as I said
8 earlier. And that place of safety will afford protection to
9 the mine worker.

10 So we'll go back into this with the fight-or-
11 flight response. It's a danger. It's a human interaction
12 to defend life or to escape danger.

13 This inherited reaction is involuntary, and as
14 such, requires harnessing in an underground emergency; i.e.,
15 training. People have to be trained to overcome that
16 reaction of fight or flight. Trained personnel are taught
17 to SLAM, or to stop, to look, to assess, and to manage their
18 environment.

19 Underground emergencies demand all trained skills
20 to come together in often hazardous environments. So people
21 in an emergency have this resolve. Step one is to stop.
22 Say not so fast, I can look around and think about what's
23 happening. Think through this emergency. Is this life-
24 threatening? Has the gases present been determined? Do you
25 need SCSRs now, or do you need them later? Can I

1 communicate to the surface? Which is the available best
2 escape route?

3 The step two is to identify the hazards of each
4 reaction in the emergency, and this step begins before any
5 immediate reactive response occurs. To determine the
6 essential steps to maintain life and property, address the
7 issue of identifying noxious or poisonous gases and identify
8 hazards for SCSRs. Check all communication links to the
9 surface, and identify any escape routes that exist under the
10 present condition.

11 Step three, analyzation or determine if you have
12 the knowledge, training, and tools required for the job to
13 identify key people within your group. Experience helps to
14 identify potential hazards, obviously. Assessment should
15 continue throughout this active response to the incident.
16 Share the identified hazards with others in your group. And
17 remember, two heads are better than one when you go to this
18 situation.

19 Step four is to manage or to remove or to control
20 these hazards, and the use of appropriate equipment.
21 Utilize established control methods. Eliminate or remove
22 the hazard completely. In other words, if you can't get out
23 of the coal mine, and you have a place of safety to go to,
24 go to that place of safety.

25 Substitute. Reventilate from a fresh air source.

1 Engineer. Enter an established refuge chamber and wait it
2 out. Sit it out if you have to. Administrative, follow the
3 written response instructions on the personal protective
4 equipment such as SCSRs.

5 The training side of it, mine officials receive
6 training in their years of study, but they never need to use
7 the knowledge. The fall-back then becomes the SLAM
8 philosophy. If you haven't used the knowledge, then you
9 need to have this fall-back. Mines rescue personnel receive
10 training and practice in emergency response, and utilize
11 this knowledge on a regular basis to instill this skill
12 indelibly. People that are trained this way will take the
13 lead, and will often lead people to safety.

14 Mine workers rarely receive practice in emergency
15 response, but will have the knowledge base through the
16 annual refresher training obligations under MSHA. This will
17 give them at least a little base, at least somewhere to come
18 from, and the mines rescue people will tend to lead from
19 that point onwards.

20 So the response situation is the basic mines
21 rescue principle is to provide timely, rapid intervention to
22 emergency events that impact the United States mining
23 industry. The fundamental principle has its roots in
24 history, where this concept of rescue chambers began. This
25 took the form of teaching the concept of barricading to mine

1 workers awaiting rescue in small mines. This is very
2 dissimilar to the larger mines of today.

3 Simply put, mines rescue relies on the physical
4 strength of the trained man to effect a rescue and recover
5 individuals from a hostile environment, some of which may
6 need to be carried. The egress from the mine, from a refuge
7 chamber or place of safety, the endangered miner can be
8 either provided with an agreed safe route of egress from the
9 mine with available communication systems.

10 He can also retrieve additional SCSR escape
11 devices, or replenish deployed self-rescuers nearing the end
12 of their life. They can retrieve stored mine plans to
13 permit an ease of identifying egress routes, either primary
14 or secondary, whichever is the safest travel at that time.
15 Be supplied with information from the surface to aid the
16 escape from a hostile environment, and/or remain in relative
17 safety.

18 The Phoenix Chamber then. Mines with those
19 established refuge chambers afford greater protection for
20 all people underground. Mines can now also utilize this
21 place of safety as a major communication link to the
22 surface, and give their mine worker a safe haven to sit it
23 out if this is the required course of action. Mines, in an
24 emergency response mode, now have time to plan the rescue
25 and recovery effort that is not time-critical, as those

1 mines don't have rescue chambers. It gives us time. It
2 gives us time that we can look at how we're going to
3 retrieve these people underground.

4 So we come to the essential criterias of the
5 refuge chamber. And the Phoenix refuge chamber basically
6 comes to the forefront here. We're thinking of entering the
7 rescue chamber so that we have, I guess, an air lock that
8 goes between the people when they're in a safe haven to
9 entry where rescue teams can come in, or extra people can
10 enter that refuge chamber.

11 We looked at the fact that they also need to have
12 some facilities in there, such as toiletry facilities and
13 the like. Air supply will give us a means of maintaining
14 life. This chamber that's identified here basically is
15 probably the one that's going to be closest to the face area
16 that's a portable unit.

17 And if we have this portable unit in place, it
18 will afford us some protection that will give us some time
19 for people to either retreat to a place of safety, or be
20 rescued from that place of safety.

21 You can also see that we've got the storage areas
22 for the blankets, the pillows, the first aid equipment. All
23 of that sort of things are all accommodated within the
24 chamber.

25 The Phoenix Chamber, the out-by door will open out

1 to resist an over-pressure. The in-by door will also open
2 out to give an air-lock arrangement. All corners braced for
3 over-pressure resistance, according to RPE that endorses
4 this. The bench seat is to be designed as a storage area
5 for additional supplies, like SCSRs. Blankets, first aid
6 supplies, EMT kits, or for definitive care of patient,
7 oxygen therapy units, et cetera.

8 Internal wall is filled with foam for insulation
9 and comfort, and the interlock entry door is to guarantee
10 this air lock arrangement.

11 That's about all I have to give. I thank you for
12 the time that you've given me here. And I believe strongly
13 that this mining industry does need these sort of places to
14 afford protection for our mine workers. It's critical to
15 afford this protection to these people. Thank you.

16 (Applause.)

17 MR. FINFINGER: Okay, we're making good progress.
18 Our next speaker is Mr. Rohan Fernando. Rohan's position,
19 he's the Manager for Breathing Gas Systems. He works for
20 Draeger Safety Systems. He gives me a description of what
21 they do, but I'm sure we'll hear about that during his
22 presentation. Rohan.

23 MR. FERNANDO: Good afternoon. Thank you very
24 much for inviting me to give this presentation here.

25 I'd like to give you an overview of Draeger's

1 shelters that have been designed and delivered to various
2 countries mainly in Europe.

3 Draeger's experience in designing shelters and
4 shelter systems is drawn through delivering these systems
5 and solutions to the industry and to the government. Some
6 of these systems are used in off-shore platforms, rescue
7 trains or railway vehicles, and also for mining and
8 tunneling.

9 These are some examples of custom shelters. For
10 example, these in a tunnel. And that particular design was
11 a solution to actually conform to the shape of it. You can
12 see here gas supply cylinder banks, and access to this
13 shelter was from the front here. Or from a tunnel viewpoint
14 it's from the side.

15 These are the shelters. And again you can see
16 some of the dimensions tailored to fit into that particular
17 application.

18 More examples. These are interesting design in
19 that the dual wall is set at an oblique angle in order to
20 take in a stretcher without tilting it too much. Sometimes
21 our shelters are designed based on standardized shipping
22 containers, and modified in order to achieve the protection
23 and the function that you need from these.

24 The protection principle, we've heard a lot about
25 the life support system that goes into shelters in a lot of

1 the previous presentations. These shelters designed by
2 Draeger are for protection to users by creating a respirable
3 atmosphere inside an enclosed space. This protection is
4 ensured by maintaining the oxygen level in the range 19 to
5 22 volume-percent, maintaining the carbon dioxide level to
6 less than one volume-percent, and creating an over-pressure
7 atmosphere inside the shelter.

8 In addition to that, we are also looking to
9 cooling. And a lot of these shelters are made with the air
10 conditioning systems. Here is a graphical impression of
11 that system here. A scrubbing system is used to control the
12 CO2 levels. The air supply from fixed to hypercylinders is
13 used to create an over-pressure, and oxygen from oxygen
14 banks or cylinders is used to feed in the oxygen to make up
15 oxygen that is consumed by the occupants.

16 In certain cases, we also install the systems
17 outside the shelters. That depends on the customer's
18 preferences. And some of the general features of these
19 shelters are, once again, see the CO2 scrubber in this case
20 in an outside unit, O2 supply, a couple of cylinders over
21 here. The breathing air supply in this case in cascades,
22 cascade banks. Air conditioning, you can see that over
23 there. Alarms and sirens and over-pressure valves basically
24 to control the over-pressure, or to maintain the over-
25 pressure in the shelter.

1 Gas-tight doors are necessary, as you've heard
2 also in the previous presentations, to maintain the fresh
3 air inside. And, okay, external air supply, delivery of
4 power, battery power, and standard light.

5 This is an example of a CO2 scrubbing system
6 installed inside the shelter. And it's normally installed
7 underneath the bench. We have dual air conditioned twin
8 blower system. The blowers are housed in this, at the ends
9 of the unit. And it's, of course, designed for battery
10 operation.

11 The flood line is contained in cartridges, and
12 spare cartridges are stacked so that we could double the
13 calculated time for the scrubber unit.

14 Now we are off the inside, I would go through
15 every one of these, but the basic control elements are
16 there. The air control, oxygen control, filtration of
17 external air supply, battery control, and electrical switch
18 gear. This also, now that we are off the gas-tight doors
19 from the outside. Sorry, from the inside.

20 The other equipment of course are necessary, and
21 in this case you can see a toilet, maps of emergency
22 evacuation routes, food and water, first-aid equipment, and
23 additional breathing devices, portable gas monitors can all
24 be stored over here.

25 I'll go back a slide here to show you that is

1 basically our portable gas monitor. That would measure your
2 O2 and CO2 on the inside. Now, of course we can also
3 monitor the gases outside.

4 So, in summary, shelters can be designed to a
5 required specification, according to site conditions. And
6 these would be smaller shelters for low seam heights,
7 shelters on skids or wheels for transportability, inflatable
8 shelters or assembled shelters, or even stand-alone life
9 support system for built-in shelters.

10 In this case, these are life-support systems, for
11 example, for 10 persons for 12 hours. And basically, it
12 consists of all the elements. These are the same elements
13 we talk about all the time: the oxygen, the air banks, and
14 the CO2 scrubber, and also cooling.

15 Now, modifications necessary to current designs
16 will be driven by MSHA and mining industry recommendations.

17 And we at Draeger basically are here for that purpose, to
18 learn from the authorities, as well as the industry, of what
19 is required from these shelters.

20 Some of the things that come to mind especially of
21 coal mines would be MSHA-approved components and parts,
22 intrinsically safe electrical equipment, maybe even
23 explosion-proof, fire-resistant material and insulation,
24 training programs, and other modifications.

25 So with that, I thank you for your attention.

1 (Applause.)

2 MR. FINFINGER: I'd like to encourage you to give
3 us your written questions. We have about 15, 20 so far. I
4 noticed that the most serious and difficult questions are
5 for Dr. Jan Oberholzer.

6 Okay. Our next presenter is Mr. Alan Becker, U.S.
7 Navy. By the way, he's very well represented here today.
8 He is from U.S. Naval Academy, graduated with MS in Ocean
9 Engineering Degree from MIT. After serving in U.S. Navy as
10 a diving engineer officer, he retired to work at PCCI. He
11 has been involved in the design and production of life
12 support systems for the last 20 years.

13 Mr. Alan Becker.

14 MR. BECKER: Good afternoon. I literally feel
15 like a fish out of water. I have spent my entire adult life
16 in, around, or under the water. But I did that learning
17 life support systems. And if you think of what we're
18 talking about right now, the mine shelter is a life support
19 system.

20 I have worked with Cowan Manufacturing of
21 Australia for about 10 years. Cowan has built the U.S.
22 Navy's standard Navy double-lock recompression chamber.
23 Again, not a lot different than a refuge chamber.

24 This unit that you see right here is in production
25 and in use in Australian mines. I'm going to talk about

1 this unit. At the end we'll discuss some of the
2 modifications that we can do.

3 I'd also say that from my colleague from Draeger,
4 me, too. Because everything he said is going to apply to
5 the chamber that I'm showing you, so I'm not going to spend
6 a lot of time on this.

7 Ours is a rigid-construction chamber. And here
8 you see it in the low position. This is to accommodate
9 those places where we have four- and five-foot tunnels that
10 we have to get through. The roof is dropped down to five
11 feet in this one. We have another one that drops down to
12 four feet.

13 When we get on site, the roof is expanded up to
14 its height of seven-foot-three, and it's about an eight-and-
15 a-half-by-16-foot footprint. What this allows us is to be
16 transported with the common machinery that you find in the
17 mines today.

18 I'd like to take you on a quick guided tour into
19 this unit. This is a 12-man unit. This is also a double-
20 lock chamber unit. There's two compartments to it. That
21 allows us to bring people in, and not lose the air that's
22 already in there.

23 You're looking down towards the back end of the
24 unit, and you can see the pistons that raise the roof and
25 one of the CO2 scrubbers.

1 This presentation was put together by my
2 Australian counterpart, and it's written in Australian.
3 Freezer unit means environmental control unit. That's a
4 heater or chiller unit. And that becomes important when
5 you're on an oxygen candle, and you're generating heat. The
6 oxygen candles are an exothermic reaction, and that
7 compartment will get hot fast. So we have a unit in here
8 which will control the temperature hot or cold.

9 Air. Air is supplied in three ways, just like all
10 the others. You can either take outside mine air, or you
11 can take compressed air from tanks, or you can recondition
12 the chamber air. Gas is supplied. The air is supplied in
13 the five bottles in the main compartment and two in the
14 entry compartment. Oxygen is supplied in two bottles.

15 Here we see the filtration system for the outside
16 air. Air from the outside comes in here, and we filter it.

17 The air supply is also used to put a curtain between the
18 entry lock and the main lock. This allows us to keep the
19 pollutants from entering into the main chamber.

20 The system is under a positive pressure, so we
21 have a relief valve and an external valve to keep the air
22 inside, and not allow it to escape when we don't want it,
23 yet allow it to relieve if we get too hot.

24 Oxygen supply. Again, this is an oxygen expansion
25 tank. The oxygen comes into the tank from the flask that we

1 have, and then is dispersed in doses to maintain the oxygen
2 content at the 19th at 22 percent.

3 CO2 scrubbers. We have two of these scrubbers.
4 They have soda lime in there. These happen to change color
5 as they get used up. And when you see the color rise up to
6 the top of that limit, you change out the canister.

7 Access. Here you can see the inner lock and the
8 entry lock. The entry lock also has a chemical toilet and a
9 wash basin.

10 The two scrubbers are powered by on-board
11 batteries. They have a 24-hour capacity. That's not the
12 limit. That's what this unit -- this unit is meant for 12
13 man-days, 12 men for one day, four men for three days, or
14 some other mathematical permutations of that.

15 The canisters do require periodic change-out, and
16 it's approximately every three hours with 12 men. Again,
17 the system was designed for 240 volts AC, but that's just
18 because of where it exists right now. It does have an
19 internal power outlet where you can have a charger plus a
20 spare. Everything operates on 12 volts DC.

21 Here you see the batteries. These are standard
22 auto batteries. You can increase the size of the batteries
23 or increase the number of batteries to extend the duration.

24 This is the part I'd like to really talk to you
25 about, is the current designs. Right now we have a design

1 that will take you to 90 man-days, nine men for 10 days.
2 That number is not hard or fast. Remember, U.S. submarines
3 stay under water until their food runs out. That's measured
4 in months, not weeks or days or hours. So the limit is
5 technically feasible. You have to decide how long you want
6 this unit to endure.

7 We're evaluating alternative power units. Several
8 things, including human power. And I think human power
9 plays into some psychological issues that we'll talk about
10 later. We need to have something to do.

11 The other thing is increase the pulse loading.
12 I'm not convinced that these units cannot be explosion-
13 loaded, or have a design for explosion-proof. I can design
14 the chamber so that it withstands the pulse weight. The
15 problem you have is that pulse weight is going to knock the
16 chamber somewhere further down the tunnel. But there are
17 ways of designing the location of that to allow you to
18 absorb or deflect the explosion weight.

19 So the designs that you see, and you're going to
20 hear some more about the same things again from other
21 portable units, are there. The technology exists. You can
22 buy this unit today. There's nothing magic about it. It
23 uses proven technology. It has not met any MSHA standards,
24 because I don't believe there are any standards as yet. So
25 that's the issue that we're going to face is what standards

1 we have, and what the qualification process is.

2 That's all I have, and I'll take questions at the
3 end.

4 (Applause.)

5 MR. FINFINGER: Our next speaker is Mr. Dwayne
6 Towery from Gamma Services. Dwayne is the Vice President of
7 Gamma Services International, which provides the rescue POD
8 proximity detection system called Tramguard, a miner tracker
9 system, and a gamma detector used on continuous or high-wall
10 miners.

11 Dwayne is a fourth-generation coal miner, with 12
12 years of mining experience in maintenance and production
13 support. He also has an 18-year background in emergency
14 medicine, which he currently works as a flight paramedic for
15 an air evac life team.

16 He has a Bachelor of Science Degree, and he has
17 also completed all the prerequisites for pre-medicine.

18 MR. TOWERY: Thank you. I'm sure everybody sat
19 there and, here comes another one to the podium. So I'll
20 make it short and sweet, and keep it as small as I can.

21 I just want to thank you for the opportunity for
22 everybody coming out today. I know a lot of other things
23 were going on.

24 The first thing I want to start with, why a rescue
25 POD? Well, everybody knows since January that some of our

1 colleagues have fallen. And with that, we have been looking
2 at modern technology, trying to pursue with the mining
3 community to prevent any more losses.

4 And a lot of people have talked about sealing
5 brattices. And I know that the years and years I've been
6 underground, that's something we always talk about in
7 recurrent training. And that's just kind of a last-ditch
8 effort. I mean, after your fingernails are bleeding where
9 you've tried to climb over rock falls, that's where you go
10 to. And I was underground Friday and Saturday this week,
11 and talking with some people, and they have this same
12 thought pattern on that.

13 And miners are among the most independent and
14 self-reliant people in the world. You can give us a hammer
15 and a screwdriver and a ball of tape, and we'll make some
16 wizard thing up, and make it run or go somehow. It's just a
17 coal miner. But naturally, miners prefer self-rescuers than
18 to rely on a rescue party to reach them from the surface.

19 The first thing we've got to do is, everybody's
20 talked about rescue PODs and all this equipment. You've got
21 to build the trust in that miner's mind that it's going to
22 be there when he needs it at the worst possible time.

23 Some of the key components of our rescue POD, it's
24 a fully-deployed, rugged steel enclosure to help shelter
25 miners from secondary explosions and possible roof falls.

1 We're going to go by the MSHA canopy standards for our roof
2 on it, and provide a breathable oxygen.

3 A POD typically stays at the mining unit if you
4 want to put one out by the working sections. But that seems
5 to be where everybody is going to revert back to.

6 Our standard-size POD right now is, it will hold
7 16 people for 96 hours. It's 16 feet long. Ours is a short
8 little fellow now; it's only 3.7 feet high, and less than
9 six feet wide. In Kentucky where I'm at, we don't have any
10 of these real tall coal mines, so everybody's bent over.
11 And it's going to be kind of hard to get some components
12 through.

13 We're also incorporating our through-the-earth
14 battery-powered geosteering tracking system in or near the
15 POD, so that way you can have two-way text communication
16 with the individuals inside of it.

17 Some more key components. The mine atmosphere
18 with as little as four-percent oxygen can be used as an
19 oxygen source. In a fire situation that if you go and take
20 the oxygen out of the air for the fire, then typically
21 anybody that's been downstream, they've had a bad day.
22 Well, we want to look at that a little bit different. Put a
23 temperature-reduction support system in it, because, as
24 everybody said today, you get enough people in there laying
25 around, you're going to build some heat. So you've got to

1 be able to get rid of that heat.

2 We're going to use a scrubber system, and our
3 dehumidifier inside the rescue POD to get rid of some of the
4 water and the CO and the CH4 that's outside. Portable self-
5 contained breathing units add to the interior oxygen supply,
6 and interior and exterior monitoring for the methane and the
7 CO levels. And I'll go into that a little bit more in just
8 a minute.

9 Well, ours is not the Taj Mahal, but at least
10 we're going to put a little bit of water in there, and food
11 and granola bars. We'll get them through for a few days if
12 they didn't bring their lunch bucket inside. We're going to
13 put a canister toilet in there; bodily functions still go
14 on, and these men and women do have to use the restroom.

15 We're going to use some chemlight sticks, because
16 they're small, and they'll give a little bit of light off.
17 And as I said a minute ago, we're talking a little bit
18 different here about firefighting. We're looking at
19 nitrogen-foaming firefighting as a technique to put, if the
20 people are downstream and you're upstream, and you're
21 fighting the fire, you can actually fight the fire and push
22 the nitrogen foam down to them. And if I've got four-
23 percent oxygen, and I can have a breathable atmosphere
24 inside our rescue POD at least 18 percent.

25 This is the oxygen transfer. As you can see, this

1 is the size of 192 by 68 by 44 inches tall. It's small.
2 It's 1,000 parts per million of CO and four percent methane
3 and four percent oxygen. I could take that through my
4 oxygen concentrator and give you 18 percent. That will give
5 you some breathable oxygen inside of it.

6 What we're using is this is a, basically like a
7 self-contained rescuer, that there will be 16 stationed
8 inside of this POD. You will take two of those and plug
9 them into the back, is what will actually give you your
10 inside oxygen.

11 This, what we show here, you've got two of the
12 personal O2 concentrators are in the back. Here's your CO
13 scrubber and your dehumidifier. Once again, the
14 concentration levels that are outside.

15 If we do have somebody that's injured on the
16 inside of the POD, what we can do is actually put one of
17 these oxygen concentrators on there and an 18-percent oxygen
18 level. I'll give that approximately a 98-percent oxygen
19 concentration, so I'm giving them almost medical-grade
20 oxygen, without adding any other components inside of the
21 rescue POD. It's just a little different approach.

22 As I said, there is going to be some heat that's
23 going to be generated, 85 degree through a heat exchanger.
24 We're going to put about 65 degrees back in.

25 This is pretty crude and rude and elementary,

1 folks. As I said, there's a 36-inch opening. These are
2 your seats. When I sat down in it, the roof almost touches
3 the top of my head. There's some drawers underneath for
4 some nutrition and a little bit of water. We've got to make
5 sure that we do keep them hydrated.

6 You can see the construction. We're using I-beam
7 construction. It's welded solid inside and out. So when
8 they climb in, they pull the door, seal it, turn the oxygen
9 units on, and start sending us some information and let us
10 know what's going on. We will use our through-the-earth
11 communication, and the same information we use for proximity
12 protection to be able to know who's in the POD by their RFID
13 identification.

14 It's mounted on a skid surface so it can be pulled
15 along with the units. And it's pretty heavy, because we're
16 using a lot of steel here. So as they drag the thing around
17 and try to stick a scoop stinger through the side of it,
18 then turn around and pull it down to crosscut and rib it
19 out, and then try to slew it around and hit it with a
20 shuttle car to push it into a crosscut, that's just the way
21 life is in the coal mines. So it's got to be rugged to be
22 able to live through all of that.

23 And in conclusion, utilizing the rescue POD for
24 each mining unit could be a useful method for saving lives
25 during a mine disaster. We could sit up here all day and

1 talk about this, but we don't really know what's going to
2 happen on each individual disaster. And let's hope that we
3 don't ever have to go through those again.

4 Gamma Services alone, with all its supporting
5 companies, believe our approach is one of the answers to
6 saving lives right now. It's not the only one, but it is
7 one approach.

8 However, if new ideas or guidance arises in the
9 future, we'll change our direction to expedite the
10 employment for lifesaving devices to the mining community.
11 The last thing we want to see are more fatalities out there.

12 I'm a fourth-generation coal miner, and every time I see
13 one of those fatality bullets go up, it's just another notch
14 that's hard to swallow.

15 Thank you.

16 (Applause.)

17 MR. FINFINGER: Our next speaker is Mr. Bill
18 Kennedy. He's got the long CV, three pages, but I have to
19 make it short.

20 Bill is from Kennedy Metals. His experience over
21 the last 30 years has included the ventilation of mines and
22 manufacturing of equipment. To do so, having worked on
23 ventilation problems in more than 250 mines in the United
24 States, Canada, Mexico, England, South Africa, and
25 Australia.

1 He has worked on problems in mines of various
2 minerals, including coal, salt, uranium, gypsum, gold,
3 copper, lead, zinc, feldspar, potash, et cetera. Problems he
4 has encountered range from the application of yielding steel
5 stoppings to assisting major engineering companies with
6 insulation layouts for entire new mines.

7 Mr. Kennedy.

8 MR. KENNEDY: Thank you very much. Good
9 afternoon. Thank you very much for being here to take a
10 look at this presentation.

11 I'd like to show you today about the Kennedy
12 chamber. But first a little bit of background. Some of you
13 know me, some may not. My father, Jack Kennedy, started
14 Kennedy Metal Products about 60 years ago. We're a
15 manufacturer of mining ventilation equipment. Many of you
16 would be familiar with the Kennedy stopping, or our overcast
17 man and machine doors, that sort of thing.

18 We are very used to the nature of underground mine
19 ventilation, and unfortunately, some of the difficulties
20 that have occurred recently.

21 On the screen you can see the Kennedy chamber. I
22 have two housekeeping statements to make. First, I'd like
23 to advise you that the entire presentation is copyright 2006
24 Jack Kennedy Metal Products and Buildings, Inc., all rights
25 reserved, with the permission hereby given for MSHA to put

1 this presentation on the website.

2 The second thing is the presentation shows
3 products that have patents granted or pending U.S. or
4 foreign.

5 We have heard some things today about the use of
6 chambers. And previous to this meeting, I've heard a number
7 of things about chambers, and people's reluctance to put
8 chambers in the mine because they were afraid people would
9 use them when they shouldn't. And I want to make it really
10 clear that no one at Kennedy is advocating anything of the
11 kind. And this sticker is right by the door handle: Do not
12 use the chamber if you can safely escape the mine.

13 But if you can't escape, you might want a chamber.

14 This current, the chamber that you're looking at here and
15 most of the chambers we design, is set up for 100 hours'
16 duration, very quick initialization, and basically all you
17 have to do is walk in the door. If the chamber is already
18 contaminated for some reason, the house-type units have
19 purge air, so you can exchange the air that's in the chamber
20 for fresh air. And it contains on-board oxygen supply
21 without chemical seat or ignition sources.

22 We at Kennedy are concerned that when you have an
23 event in an underground mine, particularly a coal mine, we
24 have to assume that ventilation has been compromised; and
25 therefore, everything in this chamber and what we're talking

1 about here, including the oxygen supply, is designed to have
2 no ignition sources.

3 The design criteria includes the oxygen rate
4 adjustable according to the number of people that are in the
5 chamber. That's pretty important. CO2 scrubbing, that is
6 just as important. You can't just put in oxygen and ignore
7 the CO2.

8 The chambers operate under a positive pressure.
9 No power is required. It's a mine-tough unit; it's designed
10 to be used in an underground coal mine, and dragged around
11 from one place to another, and so forth. And it's designed
12 to operate without maintenance for five years.

13 As I said, the unit is tough. It's designed to be
14 used in an underground mine. The skid design allows
15 repeated movement, with a minimum amount of height. That
16 thing is only 24 inches tall. A special hardened version is
17 available as an option.

18 The hardened version you can see depicted here, it
19 is the chamber that you saw initially, but with a heavy
20 tubing frame around it to give it considerable structural
21 integrity. This design will stand being blown around in the
22 entry, at least to some extent.

23 We have an explosion test chamber at the factory,
24 and we will probably test these in explosion conditions as
25 we get a little further along in their development. I'm not

1 sure that's a real valid criteria myself. If the chamber
2 was blown around badly enough to tear it up, I'm not sure
3 there are going to be too many people around to use the
4 chamber.

5 Life support capacity for a standard unit is 100
6 hours. If it was used at half capacity, it would be 200
7 hours. I had a customer call me the other day, and he said
8 well, I like that 100-hour, four-day design, but we really
9 want five days. And I told him that's not a problem at all.
10 We're going with more seats. If it is loaded to capacity,
11 it would be 100 hours. If it was loaded at half capacity,
12 it would be 200 hours. There is enough room in there,
13 honestly, for about double capacity, so you could do that.
14 If you had the people there and no place else for them to
15 go, they would have about 50 hours.

16 The house-type units, we have three types of units
17 that I'll tell you about. But the house-type units are the
18 most appealing to me. They have an instant set-up time.
19 Most of the time all they have to do is open the door and
20 walk in. If it's contaminated, as I indicated earlier,
21 purge air is available to blow the chamber out. Oxygen flow
22 is started with the turn of a knob, and CO2 is able to be
23 initiated in minutes.

24 The operation is simple. Purge the chamber if
25 necessary, start the oxygen flow, deploy the CO2 scrubbing

1 material.

2 Inside the chamber are very clear, simple
3 instructions, including in this case even a drawing of where
4 you put the scrubbing material on the ceiling. Everything
5 inside the chamber is similarly documented. You can see
6 here, although I'm sorry it's a little out of focus, what
7 you're supposed to be able to see right there is something
8 that says purge air valve. And by golly, there's the valve.

9 Everything in the chamber is designed to be very
10 simple. Even if you didn't have training or just got hit in
11 the head and can't remember your training, you could
12 probably still do everything that's necessary to get this
13 chamber in operation.

14 Purge we want to do very quickly. Discharging a
15 whole lot of air inside a small chamber creates a lot of
16 noise. We provide a purge-air muffler.

17 If you've got the inside under control, the next
18 thing you'd want to do is start oxygen flow. It must be
19 regulated according to the number of people in the chamber
20 rather accurately. Too little, of course, causes hypoxia.
21 Excess flow wastes chamber time, could cause oxygen
22 toxicity, certainly will if you're in there long enough.
23 And the time you start being concerned about is about 16
24 hours, and it creates a fire hazard.

25 There is an oxygen flagon next to the oxygen flow

1 meter, you can see it here. And in this particular chamber,
2 it's right by the window where the flow meter is. In this
3 particular chamber, if you can read some of those numbers,
4 if there were 10 people in this chamber, you would set it at
5 five liters per minute.

6 The oxygen flow meter is a typical medical device,
7 just like what you would see in a hospital. It's inside the
8 chamber, and you can see the oxygen pressure gauge just to
9 the right of it. The gauge to the left of it, sitting at an
10 angle, is the purge air pressure. Both of these gauges,
11 incidentally, are able to be viewed from the outside.

12 The third thing that you would do, of course, is
13 to deploy lithium sheet scrubbing material. We happen to
14 have a couple of lithium sheet experts in the audience
15 today. If you have interest in that particular sort of
16 thing, ask me afterward, and I can introduce you to them.

17 No power is required for a very long period.
18 Hours exist between the time that you have to exchange the
19 scrubbing material.

20 We provide, inside a sealed box that you see on
21 the left, a mechanical timer. In the picture on the right
22 is the timer box with the door open, you can see the timer
23 in there. It's a 24-hour mechanical timer. It has a bell
24 that rings. You can use that to determine when you're going
25 to change the scrubbing medium.

1 It has a five-year commission life. Everything in
2 the chamber is designed for a five-year life without
3 maintenance. Routine inspection only requires looking at
4 the outside for damage, checking the air and oxygen gauges,
5 which as I indicated you can do from the outside, and
6 checking the tamper seal to make sure that nobody has been
7 in there.

8 The picture on the left, there is a good picture
9 of the double oxygen gauge. One of those is facing into the
10 chamber, one of those is facing out. And in the picture on
11 the right, I'm sorry for the glare, but if you look just to
12 the left of the glare you can see a portion of the purge air
13 gauge.

14 Recommissioning is available at the factory, if
15 you would like that. At their five-year anniversary, the
16 oxygen and air cylinders must be removed and hydrostatically
17 tested. That's not our requirement, that's not MSHA's
18 requirement, that is a pressure vessel requirement. Would
19 the chamber work afterward? Certainly, it probably would.
20 But you wouldn't want to take that risk, and you certainly
21 wouldn't want the liability. The thing to do is at that
22 time, to have the chamber renewed. The provisions would be
23 replaced, the damage would be repaired.

24 As I indicated, there are three types. This house
25 unit, in my opinion that's the best choice, because it's

1 always ready to go.

2 We have a folding house unit available that you
3 can see deployed here. And I'll run through these slides
4 relatively quickly, and you can see the chamber coming into
5 existence, so you could get that thing up and going in a few
6 minutes.

7 Its advantage is that when it's collapsed you
8 could get it around low locations, and erection doesn't take
9 any more height than the erected chamber.

10 Well, we also have available a skid unit which is
11 the basis for the other two units.

12 MR. KENNEDY: It has all the provisions that you
13 would expect and need, and it would have a space in it for
14 barricade materials.

15 There are some pictures here. You can see the
16 inside the cylinder arrangement. It has some energy-
17 absorbing design to it in case of an accident in
18 transporting it, escape windows, permissible telephone,
19 chemical toilet, provisions that you can see here, including
20 \$300 permissible flashlights. There is a nice, bright
21 interior with good seats, guest sampling ports. It operates
22 under positive pressure. It has relief valves that
23 continually purge the chamber and the air lock, and it comes
24 with first aid, some repair materials, and is available with
25 some DVD retraining materials and mobil chamber for training

1 purposes.

2 I have run a little bit over. I am about to be
3 frowned at. Thank you very much for listening to the
4 presentation and coming today.

5 (Applause.)

6 MR. FINFINGER: His rescue chamber also got a red
7 light flashing, so we show it to you.

8 Our next presenter is James Rau. He is qualified
9 as a mining engineer from the University of Queensland in
10 Brisbane, Australia, and he has been with MineARC since
11 2006.

12 At MineARC, he has been managing the United States
13 division of the company, and providing metal companies with
14 retimber variations. These assessments involve irradiating
15 down into ground mines, current refuge chamber designs and
16 capacities, escape route systems, ventilation, emergency
17 preparedness and required numbers and locations.

18 Prior to MineARC, he run two of the of the new
19 Australia operations, and he was responsible for completing
20 refute timber due diligence and restoring MineARC's refuge
21 chambers. James.

22 MR. RAU: Thank you. I'm going to keep this very
23 short. Another thing, you can turn to my bios, I don't like
24 public presenting, so we will start quickly.

25 What I wanted to do today was give you some

1 background as to MineARC. MineARC has been involved with
2 designing refuge chambers since 1994. They originally were
3 requested by Western Mining Company to design one of the
4 first refuge chambers. Now, this was a very basic system,
5 had a scrubbing unit and basically a converted sink and
6 turner.

7 What I want to -- right here is basically, in
8 other words, leading developer and manufacturer of refuge
9 chambers. These are a few of our major customers in
10 Australia. As you can see, Newcrest, Newmont, Baouk, Satwad
11 in Australia is our refuge chambers. There is over 200
12 refuge chambers in Australia alone.

13 Other locations around the world include Ireland,
14 Sweden, Turkey, Canada, South America, Papua New Guinea,
15 Indonesia and all of Australia. Of particular interest
16 today is that we have one unit in a coal mine at Huntly,
17 which is solar energy.

18 What I want to explain today is basically the two
19 units which we have designed. One of them is for licensing
20 insertion, the other is for standard cemenry. We are
21 currently manufacturing our standard cemenry unit within
22 Australia, a privilege to be sought in Australia and MSHA
23 concurrently. Outstanding within Australia basically
24 require that all equipment that goes in the coal mines is
25 intrinsically safe. That is not the case here in the U.S.,

1 so effectively if you have the same height you could use our
2 chambers in the coal mines. What we want to do is put best
3 practice for down and ensure they are intrinsically safe.

4 We anticipate delivery to the U.S. within four to
5 six months, and this is dependent obviously on the MSHA
6 approval process, and long-term, we would like to
7 manufacture within the U.S.

8 Now we have already spoken to private enterprises
9 and we're looking to state government and centers and things
10 like that as well, and anyone that would like to do a joint
11 venture.

12 What you are looking at here is CRM64-inch units
13 that has a standard 64-inch height. Because there is no
14 compressed air in the mines here, it uses an air locking
15 system. I'll go into it in further detail, and that's the
16 one we are currently manufacturing.

17 This is our CRM24-inch unit. The top left picture
18 you will see there it has in its collapsible state, the
19 lower one is basically once it's been put into place. This
20 unit would be brought into the mine on rollers. Once the
21 area where it was supposed to be placed is found, they would
22 have to mine it out, and that goes up to a height of 72
23 inches.

24 The scrubbing systems that we use in all our
25 refuge chambers is the same essentially. We scrub for

1 carbon dioxide and carbon monoxide. Obviously, it's to
2 clean the air. It uses a series of chemicals actually from
3 molecular products we presented earlier.

4 Now, the purpose is to remove the carbon dioxide
5 and carbon monoxide from the air, reducing the risk of
6 poisoning. Now, some of you might actually be thinking that
7 the carbon monoxide is from external sources.

8 Do we have any smokers in the crowd? Anyone?
9 Actually the smoke in endogenously-produced carbon monoxide
10 when you feed them oxygen. Now, this was the process that
11 was discovered by Monarch quite accidentally, and it's a
12 serious issue which hasn't been picked up by a lot of other
13 manufacturers. Cigarette smoke will produce about 20 parts
14 per million. That's an average cigarette smoker.

15 So in terms of calculations, what I'm got there in
16 10 hours the carbon monoxide will reach 2,000 parts per
17 million in a 15-man chamber.

18 Now, essentially what that is -- that's assuming
19 that you had 15 occupants all medium to heavy smokers. Now,
20 this is a patented system of Monarch.

21 As mentioned previously, there is no compressed
22 air within coal mines, so the initial source of oxygen
23 supply is fed from medical oxygen cylinders. Following on
24 from that, that's regulated for the number of occupants at
25 half a liter per second -- sorry, half a liter per minute,

1 and following on from that as a secondary source you have an
2 oxygen candle. The oxygen candle is an exodemic reaction.
3 It's sodium chlorite and it basically produced an enormous
4 amount of oxygen in a short period of time. That also
5 oxygen enriches the chambers which produced further carbon
6 monoxide from the occupants.

7 The electrical systems, basically as I said we
8 want to have them intrinsically safe. In stand-alone
9 situation, they are designed to run on mine power. Once the
10 mine power fails, a UPS battery backup system will
11 automatically run the unit.

12 Now, our current chambers run for 36 hours.
13 that's for the metalliferous industry. We can go anywhere
14 up to 96 hours. You just need to add more batteries, more
15 oxygen and more chemicals.

16 Another point that's been missed today which I
17 think is extremely important is air conditioning. If you
18 put paper inside a chamber and you don't tell the occupants,
19 you will end up killing them. Every person gives off
20 between 100 to 200 watts of light and heat. It's an
21 enormous amount of heat. If anyone sat inside one of those
22 older star refuge chambers that they showed this morning,
23 they would be fully aware of it.

24 Okay, the air locking system, basically it ensures
25 occupants can enter the chamber without contaminating other

1 persons. It's a pneumatic system and it basically has a
2 binary locking. So what would happen is the first person
3 would arrive at the chamber, they would push the button. It
4 would flush both the chamber and the air lock. Then they
5 would move into the pressurized air lock. It would recharge
6 from behind, and then the second door would open, so both
7 doors can't be open at the same time, and it has an override
8 system.

9 Okay, this is some details of our CRM64. As
10 mentioned, it has a 64-inch overall height. It's
11 essentially very similar to our current metalliferous unit
12 except that it's intrinsically safe. Constructed of
13 quarter-inch steel plate, and four-inch pressed-formed
14 channel reenforcement.

15 Now, this bundle we normally put with a skid base
16 and towing and lifting points and have wheels as optional.
17 It will have internal and external real-time gas monitoring
18 and also temperature monitoring.

19 Details of the CRM24. As mentioned, hydraulic,
20 telescoping roof. Now, that 72-inch height is still
21 something that we're questioning. We can bring that lower.

22 It's just dependent on the height restrictions of the mine.

23 It's constructed of quarter-inch steel plate. The
24 scrubbing system in this unit will be a little bit different
25 because of the height restrictions, so it will be a closed

1 system with everything pre-regulated. Essentially it would
2 just be a push button system. It will be fitted with steel
3 wheels and internal and external gas monitoring.

4 What you're looking at here is a prototype which
5 Monarch built. It's a fire-rated refuge which will
6 withstand 2,000 degrees Fahrenheit for 120 minutes. I won't
7 go into too much detail. If anyone is really interested in
8 it, they can ask myself or Jeff.

9 Essentially it has a cutting, it's got a quarter-
10 inch paint and that expands when the flame contacts, stops
11 the structure buckling, and all the scrubbing unit's air
12 conditioning, batteries, everything is internal within the
13 chamber.

14 Our future developments, we're looking at video
15 camera imaging for internal and external. All this is to
16 tie in with the mine rescue personnel so that they have the
17 best information available to them in an emergency. Also
18 alarms for power disruption. Basically that will allow the
19 information from the chamber to be fed back to the surface.

20 All of this is obviously contingent on the communication
21 systems staying up in an emergency.

22 Contact detail, they've got brochures basically
23 outside on the information bench if anyone would like to
24 take one, feel free, and if you would like to talk to us
25 when I'm not so nervous, it will be good as well.

1 Thank you.

2 (Applause.)

3 MR. FINFINGER: Our next speaker is Kimberli
4 Tatton. Kimberli has over 10 years business sales and
5 administrative experience. For the last four years, she has
6 been working with mining health and safety solutions,
7 working with one of the most respected mine safety
8 professionals in the mining industry. Kimberli has joined
9 forces with Lynn Sitterud of Modern Mine Safety Supply to
10 design and fabric a refuge chamber for the underground coal
11 mining industry.

12 Kimberli has a degree in business administration,
13 and she is currently pursuing a degree in occupational
14 health and safety with a concentration in fire science.

15 Kimberli.

16 MS. TATTON: Good afternoon. I am going to keep
17 this very short and sweet so we can get back on track here.
18 I have a fairly short presentation for you.

19 My name is Kimberli Tatton, and I am here
20 representing Modern Mine Safety Supply, which is owned and
21 operated by Lynn Sitterud. Lynn has over 20 years
22 experience in fabricating, repairing and overhauling mining
23 equipment and has done special projects for various mining
24 operations.

25 Lynn has teamed up with Mining Health and Safety

1 solutions whose president is Randy Tatton. He is a
2 nationally-recognized underground mine safety expert, and
3 they have joined together to design and fabricate what we
4 believe is a unique mine refuge chamber for the underground
5 coal industry.

6 The outside of the chamber is fabricated from
7 quarter-inch steel with welded joints, and there is a dual-
8 sealed air locking door. The unit is likely to withstand
9 fairly substantial secondary explosions and is designed
10 specifically for the unique needs of the underground
11 cooperation and as completely customized, which means it can
12 be used in any operation given their coal height.

13 Inside the refuge chamber, we are using the refuge
14 1 scrubbing unit which was designed and built by Rand
15 Medical in Canada. We are also using medical-grade oxygen
16 cylinders, and have available backup oxygen candles.

17 The air conditioning unit is there to combat heat
18 and stroke which has been shown to actually impair decision-
19 making, so it is very important that these units do have the
20 air conditioning units in them, and the inside of the unit
21 is bright, it is lit with fluorescent lights which runs off
22 of the battery system. It is continually powered by a 120-
23 volt direct source from the mine, and once power has gone
24 out it is powered by 24-volt battery.

25 Like I said, it is completely customizable for any

1 operation size or needs, and we are currently in the design
2 process to make it intrinsically safe.

3 It can be outfitted with any operation's
4 individual communication needs, whether they are using the
5 PED system or any other communication system.

6 This unit is fully portable. It has wheels that
7 make it easily relocated to support the mining operation as
8 it progresses. Inside the unit is fully equipped with any
9 food and water supplies that are needed as well as a first
10 aid kit with blankets for shock treatment, structures and
11 other necessary first aid implements. There will also be
12 fire extinguishes, alternate light sources like flashlights
13 and batteries or chemical light sticks, cards, pen and
14 papers, which have been shown to relieve stress and tension
15 for the occupants within the chamber; environmental sampling
16 capability, which will be capable inside and outside of the
17 chamber itself; as well a separate sanitary facility within
18 the first chamber like there is sanitary facility for people
19 to get a little bit of privacy while they are in the
20 chamber.

21 Quickly, we have developed a fully self-contained
22 mobil and modern mine refuge. We think it's unique for the
23 coal mining underground operation. The cutting edge of
24 technology to further enhance emergency response capability,
25 refuge chambers will provide an additional alternative to

1 escape during mine fires or explosions.

2 If you have any questions or want any details
3 about how we can customize this for you, please look to
4 myself or Lynn Sitterud who is out in the audience. We will
5 be happy to answer any questions for you.

6 Thank you.

7 (Applause.)

8 MR. FINFINGER: Thank you. This is the end of
9 this session. We would like to continue and do the panel
10 discussion 5, the session 5. I would like to thank all the
11 presenters in my session. I think they have done very well.
12 They all kept their time, and I would like to invite Jeff
13 to come and introduce the speakers, the next speakers.

14 MR. KRAVITZ: Okay, coming down the home stretch
15 here, our first speaker for the next session will be
16 Professor Jim Joy from the University of Queensland. He
17 will be speaking on risk management for the mining industry.
18 Dr. Joy is professor of mining safety and director of
19 Minerals Industry, Safety and Health Center at the
20 University of Queensland.

21 The center was established in 1998, with the
22 support of major Australian mining companies and the
23 Queensland government. MISHC is a national center active in
24 education, applied research, consulting, and the development
25 of the mineral industry's cooperative initiative, funded by

1 the Minerals Council of Australia.

2 Jim has worked on many industry risk projects
3 across Australia and overseas. He also presents papers,
4 seminars and courses on risk management and human factors as
5 well as developing resources such as safe mining handbook
6 for the 2003 National Minerals Industry and Risk Assessment
7 Guideline, and the 2006 Risk Management in the Minerals
8 Industry Guideline.

9 Jim has also been involved in corporate and board-
10 level advisory roles to BPHBilliton, WMC, and currently
11 Extrata as well as been a panel member of the 2005 New South
12 Wales Mining C3U. Dr. Joy.

13 MR. JOY: Thank you.

14 (Applause.)

15 MR. JOY: Thanks for the opportunity to be here
16 and thanks for hanging in for the whole day. I feel like I
17 could go home and design a rescue chamber after this having
18 knowing very little about it before, but it's been terrific.

19 I'm going to switch gears probably considerably
20 from the last session because my center is a not-for-profit
21 sort of -- it's a center that was set up by the industry.
22 It's been around since 1998, as the introduction said. It's
23 always been 100 percent funded by companies, and those
24 companies, these days we get about a third of our funds
25 through the Mining Council of Australia, which is similar to

1 your own National Mining Association, as well as the
2 research consulting projects for industry as well as
3 education.

4 I had been honored to do a two-and-a-half-day
5 seminar on risk management in the minerals industry about
6 six weeks ago at Pittsburgh Research Labs for NIOSH and it
7 was great, really enjoyed it, put 40-50 people in the room.

8 I'm going to try and compress some of that down to about 20
9 minutes of what risk management is about, focusing on, I
10 guess, two things: one is this is what a mine manager gets
11 taught to be able to be a mine manager in underground coal.

12 There is a five-day course that every underground
13 mine manager in coal and metalliferous have to take in risk
14 management, so I'm going to give you a little slice of what
15 they have to take to get a ticket to manage a mine, which is
16 all about their competency to make decisions about managing
17 major hazards, including the emergency response and rescue
18 aspect, because actually they are the people that will make
19 a lot of the decisions or be involved at least in initial
20 response and decision-making in an emergency situation.

21 Secondly, I am going to focus the discussion of
22 risk management on one area of it, as the title says in the
23 slide, managing major hazards, and those are by definition
24 in my definition multiple fatality potential hazards in the
25 minerals industry.

1 As I said, we were set up in 1998, and initially,
2 as the bottom line says, we were set up by companies. Seven
3 companies funded the set up of the center for the first five
4 years because they felt like mining engineers didn't know
5 enough about managing safety and health risks, and they
6 needed to learn more about that while they were still
7 students in the university and before they graduated.

8 So we started off and developed quite an extensive
9 program. That's our program to date. A lot of courses down
10 the right-hand side of the screen that you can get various
11 levels of paper for, but the thing with the red box on it,
12 risk management with a bracket G3 after it is actually, as I
13 said, a requirement to be able to get a mine manager's
14 ticket. If you have one already, you still have to take the
15 course.

16 It's a five-day course, and you can imagine a 20-
17 year experienced coal mine manager showing up for a five-day
18 course on a Monday morning. He doesn't like me very much,
19 that's for sure, but by the end of the week normally it's an
20 interesting week because we are really challenging thinking
21 about managing hazards and trying to deal with changing
22 naturally human reactive mind-sets to much more proactive
23 and prevention-focused thinkers in the management of the
24 mines.

25 The course is run about once or twice a month, and

1 has been for the last three years. We have put more than
2 300 people through the course, and there are only 50 coal
3 mine managers in eastern Australia.

4 History of disasters, as Dr. Oberholzer mentioned
5 this morning in some of the disasters that occurred in
6 Australia and elsewhere, has driven the industry in
7 Australia to look at major hazards as a separate problem to
8 be dealt with. The picture on the left is not one of the
9 ones on the right. That, of course, is Freeport, and you
10 would have seen that I'm sure before. The four events listed
11 on the right are ones in order that Dr. Oberholzer
12 mentioned, the Moura explosion this morning, but there are
13 other events, and that's in time order from the oldest at
14 the top to the youngest at the bottom, all during the last
15 15 years, multiple fatality events, single multiple fatality
16 events in metalliferous mining.

17 We have a decreasing fatality rate in Australia.
18 Risk management has been a part of an approach to managing
19 risks in Australia over that time period. It probably
20 started in terms of discussion in the early '87-88 period, a
21 similar sort of presentations like I'm making to you were
22 made in that period quite frequently through to, as I'm
23 going to talk about, the use of risk assessment and risk
24 management integrated into the regulatory requirements,
25 later adopted by companies in a way that was much more

1 detailed and much more extensive than the regulations
2 required.

3 But as you can see, if you do a line through that
4 you wouldn't get a significant, although it does look
5 significant, it doesn't come out to be statistically
6 significant, but it looks like a pretty good trends, and I
7 haven't got the last two years, but they are quite similar.

8 Note that that's in per million manhours and yours
9 is 200,000 here, I believe.

10 This slide is meant to sort of illustrate a
11 regulatory approach. It's meant to show a continuum where
12 the left side is prescriptive regulation, that is,
13 prescriptive about the detail of how you manage hazards, and
14 the right end of the continuum is the enabling regulatory
15 approach, and that is one that's purely duty of care.

16 Do whatever you need to do to make it safe. The
17 government is not going to tell you anything about how to
18 achieve that.

19 Where we are right now in the Australian minerals
20 industry is in the middle, where the government is
21 prescriptive about process, not so much about the detail of
22 managing hazards, although there is still a fair amount of
23 detail and regulations in various states. Really what you
24 are doing with integrating risk assessment/risk management
25 is saying the government is prescribing how you make

1 decisions. Decision-making is what it's all about, and
2 somebody mentioned it earlier this morning that the way we
3 reduce risks is we make better decisions. So the government
4 sets the approach.

5 Now, some of the ways that the government sets
6 approach where the regulator then becomes a cogent or an
7 auditor of that approach and the industry basically decides
8 what to do. Some of those manifestations are having
9 generally the principals of risk assessment and risk
10 management in the acts and regulations. In other words,
11 saying that you must understand the hazards.

12 You must assess the risks. You must put in the
13 appropriate controls. You must think about the hierarchy
14 control, which was mentioned by Ian earlier, the elimination
15 through to personal protective equipment of five or six
16 steps in the hierarchy of control. You must have certain
17 competencies in your workforce related to risk
18 assessment/risk management.

19 The second aspect is the -- what I will talk about
20 as major, and that should say major or principal hazard
21 management plans. Excuse me, I left out a word there. But
22 say hazard management plans in New Wales and Queensland, and
23 you must have major hazard management plans, or they are
24 called principal in the other states, for certain hazards
25 such as outbursts, such as gas, such as roof falls and those

1 kinds of events.

2 You must also have a competency in risk
3 management, and one of the ones I mention to you was this
4 risk management for mine managers or other competencies in
5 risk assessment and risk management in Queensland, and in
6 some states there is also a requirement if you want an
7 approval for new equipment to come into an underground
8 mining environment, especially coal, or if you want an
9 exemption for existing regulations, risk assessment is the
10 way that you demonstrate that that approval or exemption
11 should be accepted by the regulator.

12 So you're looking at a fairly extensive integrated
13 approach to risk assessment and risk management, but I would
14 hasten to say that the regulations are evolving, and there
15 are limitations to risk assessment/risk management that we
16 could talk about if we had a lot more time.

17 What I wanted to get into specifically this major
18 hazard management approach. What you are looking at on the
19 screen is just a basic model of what you're suggesting
20 should be done with a major hazard or any hazard, but I
21 would say major hazard.

22 You've got to identify them. You have got to
23 understand them. If you have got me saying you've got to
24 identify it, understand it, make sure you understanding the
25 levels of methane, where it might exist, why it might exist,

1 and it would be the same for in-rushes or any similar event,
2 identifying the hazards especially when there is a fair
3 amount of uncertainty is a critical step to risk management.

4 Then analyzing the risk is looking at what can go
5 wrong, how likely it can go wrong, what are the consequences
6 if it does, and from that trying to identify the right level
7 of control. There is no zero risk.

8 So some hazards you just, and risks you put up
9 with because the risk is acceptable. Sometimes you can't do
10 something because the risk is too high. In the middle you
11 have this aspect of control. Managers are taught to go
12 through the process of thinking, to learn to think this way
13 about hazards, and to put in those controls, monitor the
14 performance of those controls through auditing and
15 performance management, and also to look out for change.

16 Change is a major factor, of course, in the mining
17 industry, and it's something that often is a contributor to
18 major events. A hazard is changed. The risks changed. We
19 missed it, and we blew up the mine.

20 The control framework mind-set that you teach mine
21 managers is a four-part approach, and of course we've been
22 talking a lot about emergency response and rescue, which is
23 at the right end of the model, but of course we want the
24 other three parts too. We want the manager to think in a
25 continuum of response to a hazard from prevention and

1 monitoring of conditions and important controls, through to
2 first response, or as they call them in Queensland, TARPs,
3 trigger action response points; points where the CO level
4 goes up to a certain point, and we start to take action. We
5 don't wait for it to get too high or methane to get too
6 high, and that applies for every major hazard.

7 We look for ways that we can identify early in the
8 development event that we are on the way towards potential
9 major event, and my managers are taught that they should be
10 thinking that way about every hazards: find that trigger,
11 look for the early warning so that you can do something
12 before you start to progress towards a major event.

13 And of course the last bit is should it all hit
14 the fan be prepared, whether it be with chambers or whatever
15 the technology that's required for that particular hazard.

16 I would note here that it's pretty easy to see
17 when you do a fair amount of risk assessment, as I've done
18 over the last 20 years, that sometimes the emergency
19 response isn't very well thought out specific to the hazard
20 and you get conflicts in mines like, for example, their
21 emergency egress is great for -- is good for a mine fire but
22 it's lousy for an in-rush.

23 So why do this major hazard management planning?
24 Well, obviously we want to focus as an industry on the big
25 killers, on the high consequence events, and make sure they

1 are under control. They are low probability/high
2 consequence events, so by human nature people may not think
3 about something that hasn't happened before, but could. The
4 infrequent event is harder to manage than the frequent one.

5 We want to do that in the most effective and
6 efficient manner. In other words, we want to make sure we
7 are focusing on priorities and spending our dollars where
8 it's most important. Risk assessment will focus you on the
9 most important issues and the most important controls.

10 Of course, it's to meet regulatory requirements in
11 some cases, but I could give you a list of companies that
12 have gone well beyond that and use the same technologies in
13 a lot of different areas where they have major threats to
14 the success of their business.

15 So in the Queensland regulations, you end up with
16 a list of specific issues which are considered to be major
17 hazards. This was a decision post-Moura to basically say
18 there are certain major hazards that there must be a risk
19 assessment-based major hazard management plan for, and a
20 process to achieve those plans, although not defined exactly
21 in the regulations is inferred, and the general good process
22 is to, of course, find those hazards, review them, location,
23 risk controls, and then to manage with that information
24 which can often be that we do the analysis but we don't do
25 the management through documentation, action plan,

1 standards, setting accountabilities, certainly putting
2 things in place, and the two last steps are actually
3 extremely important: monitoring and auditing to make sure
4 things are there that are absolutely critical.

5 Again, remembering that the infrequent, high
6 consequence event is a very easy one to not think about in
7 the day-to-day pressures of managing in a mine, so we have a
8 particularly -- the major hazard management plan establishes
9 a particularly formal documented approach to managing this
10 hazard that says we must have this, and we have got to check
11 it. Even though we don't think it's going to happen, we've
12 got to go out and check it regularly whether it's through
13 monitoring or auditing, and we must have a formal change
14 management process.

15 If something changes, whether it be the hazard or
16 a control or a competency, we've got to review where we are
17 because this very infrequent high consequence event demands
18 a higher level of management system than we use for the rest
19 of our operations, and that's what drove the whole
20 development of this approach.

21 The industry recognizing that management systems
22 were not particularly robust in coal mines, and the major
23 hazard management planning approach is much more robust. It
24 is an artificial management system really, and probably in
25 some mines you don't need it anymore in Australia, and

1 perhaps other parts of the world because there are other
2 management systems are more robust.

3 But where the management system is not robust, and
4 that is that accountabilities are not clear, auditing and
5 monitoring is not a regular part of duties. Change is not
6 managed well, creating this artificial management system
7 greatly increases the likelihood that you will prevent and
8 be prepared for a catastrophic hazard.

9 Risk assessment is a key part, of course, of
10 developing a major hazard management plan, usually at two
11 levels. Those of you that are familiar with risk
12 assessment, I'm just going to touch on this quite briefly.

13 The terms "risk assessment" or "risk analysis" are
14 juxtaposed in Australia. Risk assessment refers to a method
15 like HAZMAT or a formal technique that looks for hazards and
16 risks, analyzes the risk, and then decides on controls. So
17 what I mean by this is those kinds of techniques, the high-
18 level broad-brush technique such as preliminary hazard
19 analysis or "what-if" analysis is used initially, and then
20 from that you identify the things that need more detailed
21 analysis in major hazard management planning such as if you
22 had an underground fire potential, an underground
23 metalliferous mine, you would do much more detailed analysis
24 on a fire in that location once you've done the broad-brush
25 analysis that said in this mine the major potential events

1 are these 10. Let's look at those in much more depth, and
2 create either individual plans or one major hazard
3 management plan.

4 So tools like fault 3 analysis commonly used in
5 many industries developed, I believe, in the U.S. military
6 missile project back in the fifties as a technique to take a
7 significant unwanted event and understand all its
8 contributors, very commonly used for major hazard management
9 planning in mining.

10 So what this top event might be a fire underground
11 causing multiple fatalities, so what you're doing is a
12 deductive logic technique to try and say what will be all
13 that causes the fire, its propagation, the lack of escape,
14 and you identify all the potential contributors so that you
15 can then look at each one and say do I have controls that
16 are adequate for all of those contributors.

17 Another common technique, probably less common and
18 simpler is the bow tie analysis technique that was developed
19 by Shell as part of their -- the name slips my -- Tripod,
20 Shell Oil's Tripod Program back in the eighties, a technique
21 to help people look at an event, not the worst-case event,
22 the top event in this would be a fire starts underground
23 where the left side of the bow tie you would use -- it's
24 just a schematic here -- but to and thing of what are all
25 the causes of a fire underground that we could have, and

1 therefore what are all the threats and the controls that we
2 have in place, or need to have in place to make sure we
3 don't get that fire.

4 The right side of the bow tie is to say should we
5 get a fire, what are we going to do, what are all the
6 consequences and how do we control for all of those.

7 It's a very simple illustration of the logic and
8 most of the time risk assessment is not about crunching
9 numbers to four or five decimal places, it's really about
10 asking a logical sequence of questions that simply
11 challenges people in terms of their understanding of a
12 hazard and challenges the organization to make sure they are
13 ready.

14 With all that analysis, we get to the framework
15 that works and put it into the plan.

16 Just quickly to close off, an additional layer to
17 this sort of major hazard management plan is actually the
18 industry trying to work together to contribute information
19 to each other, so we learn from each other. We share our
20 best practices.

21 So in Australia, we have the Minerals Industry
22 Cooperation Initiative for the last three years. We're just
23 setting up for the next five. The idea is to improve
24 industry risk management, and this is sponsored by the
25 Minerals Council of Australia, which is similar of course to

1 your National Mining Association; in other words, 29 mining
2 companies belong to this.

3 What we are trying to do is the hard products of
4 the last three years, which are now available, try to help
5 the individual mine through computer access, access
6 guidelines on risk assessment and risk management so the
7 know how to design a risk assessment and they know how to do
8 risk management.

9 MIRMGate in the bottom left is a best practice
10 guideline database. You can access online and it has 1,500
11 publications in it from around the world, including a lot of
12 the American MSHA publications that are available.

13 Professional pathways tells people where to get competency
14 in the sort of thing I'm talking about, and of course, we
15 are trying to work on the bottom right, which is the
16 database of lessons learned, but I have to kill a few
17 hundred lawyers to be able to get that one going, so we're
18 still working on that.

19 You can access our site at that address. If you
20 want to look at the resources, they are owned by the
21 industry, by the companies, and they are endorsed by the
22 regulators, and we try to work cooperatively with the
23 regulators and the companies to develop these things that
24 are optimal for the industry.

25 The next thing that will be on there will be a

1 risk management guideline which will help people chart their
2 path to move from vulnerable reactive management approaches
3 through to their fully resilient integrated risk management
4 ideals that are set in some textbooks, and are presented by
5 people like Western from Michigan, and the University of
6 Leiden, a professor there also has a model similar to this
7 which just basically helps a mine or company chart an
8 approach to improving their risk management over time.

9 So I went through that very quickly. Just a
10 closing slide. I'm pretty proud. I'm not Australian as you
11 noticed. I am Canadian. I have been there for 20 years and
12 I have always been in mining since I've been there. I
13 wasn't in mining when I was in Canada. I was in nuclear
14 power stuff.

15 But Australia has adopted risk management, not
16 only the regulators, but the regulators did it first, and
17 then the companies came on board with it, and they saw
18 value, and they picked it up. And what you're looking at
19 just briefly is improvements.

20 The top one on rock fall potential and severity in
21 a WMC mine that went to risk assessment-based ground control
22 standards basically went from a significant problem in
23 actual and potential outcomes to almost nothing, and the
24 bottom one is outbursts in a coal mine where it used to be,
25 in 1986 and '87, somebody got killed by an outburst, people

1 would come on TV and say, well, that's just the way it is in
2 mining. You get killed by outbursts. These days there
3 hasn't been an outburst since 1994-95.

4 Thank you very much.

5 (Applause.)

6 MR. KRAVITZ: Did you think you were taking your
7 life in your hands in that last comment about the lawyers.
8 Half the audience that's left are lawyers. The other half
9 wishes they were lawyers.

10 (Laughter.)

11 MR. KRAVITZ: Maybe not.

12 Okay, our last speaker today is proud to be the
13 clean-up batter. She likes that. Good. Kathy Kowalski-
14 Trakofler is going to speak on psychological and training
15 aspects, specifically she has a strong niche here, I don't
16 think anybody else addresses it the way she does, and she
17 has a fantastic job at doing this type of work.

18 She has been a research psychologist at the
19 Pittsburgh Research Laboratory since 1991. Received her
20 Ph.D. in counseling from the University of Pittsburgh, her
21 M.S. in counseling and behavioral disabilities, and B.S. in
22 education from the University of Wisconsin-Madison.

23 Her research interests include human behavior
24 during emergencies, work stress, judgment and decision-
25 making during emergencies, and issues on non-emergency

1 communications.

2 Dr. Kowalski-Trakofler is the mental health
3 advisor to NIOSH, Office for Emergency Preparedness, and I
4 keep calling her Kathy Kowalski. Fake everybody out. Okay,
5 please welcome Kathy.

6 (Applause.)

7 MS. KOWALSKI-TRAKOFLER: Thank you very much. I
8 hope that, I would like to think that you saved the best for
9 last, but I'm a psychologist, it's the end of the day, and I
10 know that I'm the outlier here. We are just about to do 180
11 degrees in terms of a lot of the information that you have
12 gotten the last many hours.

13 I would like to acknowledge my colleagues at the
14 Pittsburgh Research Laboratory who have done work in this
15 area in the last 10-15 years, looking at behavioral aspects
16 of miners and escape.

17 I want to begin by putting this within an
18 historical context. When we are talking about escape
19 behavior, it's not new. Actually reported history, it goes
20 back to approximately 603 B.C.

21 We're discussing behavior under stress. This
22 falls into the discipline of disaster psychologies. Studies
23 of military experiences, police, emergency and medical
24 personnel have provided most of the data for this particular
25 area.

1 In the 1960s, research began to be done with the
2 police departments, and also in general human response to
3 disaster. The disaster mental health area was exploded in
4 the 1970s when Dr. Korentelli developed research institute
5 at the University of Delaware.

6 The Vietnam War brought attention to the
7 psychological issues with a medical diagnosis of post-
8 traumatic stress disorder, and it then became common
9 parlance that there were psychological issues that needed to
10 be dealt with in disaster. After 9/11, the research has
11 exploded expidentially in this area.

12 What do we mean when we talk about the
13 psychological aspects of escape and sheltering? What we do
14 not mean, and I want to emphasize this, is we are not
15 talking about counseling, we are not talking about
16 psychotherapy, we are talking about individuals, normal
17 individuals who are put into an abnormal situation, and we
18 know what some of those responses are.

19 Understanding this very natural, normal human
20 response to danger provides escapees, command center
21 personnel leadership, mine rescue team members with an
22 ability to be more resilient in an emergency situation, and
23 that is our goal.

24 An individual during an escape is experiencing
25 normal symptoms of the fight-or-flight response. One of the

1 earlier speakers referred to this. This is the innate
2 response that prepares us to either fight or to run. There
3 are psychological, physical behavioral and cognitive
4 components to this response.

5 For example, and I'm not listing them all here,
6 but it's important to think about this with respect to those
7 miners as they are escaping, increase in heart rate, muscle
8 tension and perspiration. In many instances, there is
9 hyperventilation which creates a rapid heartbeat, shortness
10 of breath and in some instances nausea. This is where
11 miners have reported to me that they feel as if they are
12 having a heart attack.

13 The pupils dilate, again getting ready to run or
14 fight, the mouth gets dry, and there is numbness in the
15 hands and feet. This is usually attributed to the fact that
16 the blood is rushing to the center of the body to protect
17 the major organs.

18 In addition, there is fatigue, and the fatigue is
19 not just physical fatigue, it's an emotional fatigue. With
20 physical fatigue, many times there is a release. It's like
21 those of you who are runners know that you are fatigued
22 after a run, but there is also a release. Emotional fatigue
23 does not provide that kind of release. There is also
24 confusion and fear.

25 There are different phases of a disaster that

1 organizations experience. There is the initial impact
2 phase, and this is a phase where you can't quite believe
3 this is happening. This is also the phase that, as again
4 was mentioned earlier, people tend to try to normalize.
5 They initial response to a situation, for example, the belt
6 fire that was mentioned this morning, is to try to normalize
7 it. Oh, that can't really be a problem. It's not that
8 serious. Because of this we lose precious time in response.

9 The next phase is the heroic phase. This is a
10 phase where people are helping each other. This is where
11 the miners will be working together helping each other to
12 try to escape, to try to get out. In other disasters, this
13 is where the normal citizen passing by will come in and
14 rescue somebody.

15 Then we move to the honeymoon phase, and this is
16 where there is relief. I made it through, I'm alive,
17 everything is going to be okay.

18 Then we move into the disillusionment phase, and
19 that's the phase where all the questions come up. That's
20 the phase where we start to ask the questions to find out
21 how did this happen.

22 Finally, there is a reconstruction phase. It's
23 been suggested that emotionally the major impact is six
24 months later. What this means is when a disaster is over,
25 which many in the mining industry think when it's over, it's

1 over. When we either get the people out or the mine is back
2 in production, it's over. This is not true from a
3 psychological perspective. Actually, sometimes, as I said,
4 six months later this phase is just beginning.

5 The stages, individual stages that people go
6 through after that initial disbelief, after that initial
7 trying to normalize, there is shock. When the recognition
8 that there is danger, shock and disbelief. Then there is a
9 very strong emotional response. This can take many forms.
10 Sometimes people get angry. Sometimes people will withdraw
11 and become very quiet, but there usually is in some way or
12 another a very strong response internally or acting out.

13 Following that, there is acceptance. The
14 individual realizes that the incident happened. They are
15 going to have to accept it into their lives. Finally the
16 phase of recovery. These are not linear. They don't happen
17 one after another. People move in and out of these,
18 sometimes over a long period of time. And recovery does not
19 mean that we're back to normal because after a traumatic
20 incident there is no back to normal. What happens is there
21 is a new normal.

22 Short-term psychological symptoms, symptoms that
23 you can expect from someone after they have had a traumatic
24 incident, and this is usually within immediately afterwards
25 and within the next three months. This applies not only to

1 escapees, but this applies to people in the command center,
2 rescue personnel who have worked many long hours. There is
3 a numbness. There is a denial. A lot of times people
4 simply don't want to talk about it. They will evidence-
5 avoidance behavior not to talk about it.

6 Some miners who have escaped under duress don't
7 want to drive back down the road towards the mine because
8 they sometimes will get flashbacks.

9 Again, difficulty concentrating is very normal.
10 This is not a time to make any major decision. Withdrawal
11 of behavior, acting out of behavior, relationship problems,
12 depression, not necessarily clinical depression in the first
13 couple of weeks, but feeling down, feeling depressed is
14 normal, feeling overwhelmed, expressions of anger. Many
15 times there is an increase in alcohol consumption, change in
16 sexual functioning, and many times change in eating habits.

17 Now, these are short term. They can take effect
18 any time immediately after the incident to up to three
19 months.

20 Long-term psychological symptoms are much more
21 serious, and this is after three months, usually after six
22 months. We hear so much about post-traumatic stress
23 disorder, but that diagnosis is not relevant until three to
24 six months after an incident when symptoms such as
25 fearfulness, sleep disturbance, consistent flashbacks,

1 feelings of guilt, and that includes survivor guilt for
2 people who survived when their buddies died, generally high
3 anxiety and irritability, and many times an exaggerated
4 startled response. If there is a loud noise, particularly
5 if the incident was an explosion, people will have an
6 exaggerated response.

7 Post-traumatic stress disorder is a medical
8 psychiatric diagnosis and it's based on some or all of the
9 following: certainly a traumatic event and re-experiencing
10 that traumatic event; numbness and avoidance, which we
11 talked about; hypoarousal symptoms, which is the startle
12 response.

13 Psychiatric disorders are diagnosed on duration
14 and intensity: how long are the symptoms persistent, and
15 how severe are they? Are they interfering with normal
16 function?

17 The RAND/NIOSH report after 9/11 looked at
18 responder behavior, and this is very important because I
19 know this is talking about escapee behavior, but human
20 behavior is human behavior, and it's relevant in many
21 different circumstances and situations, and we need to take
22 our mine rescue personnel into consideration when we look at
23 some of these very basic human responses.

24 Stress affects responders' judgments, and many
25 times they will take high risk. We've heard some people

1 talk about this morning. We found this true in 9/11, some
2 of the recent research that we have done in this past year
3 with interviews. I've heard particularly mine rescue
4 personnel many times say they take additional risk when
5 there are people involved, sometimes to their own detriment.

6 We send our people in, our people who have been
7 exposed to major events, see many times some horrific
8 events, horrific events and see horrific things. I have had
9 mine people talk to me about seeing body parts, and these
10 are traumatic events.

11 Of the five senses, smell lasts longest in memory.
12 That's something that you probably didn't know. But
13 because of this, even years afterwards there will be
14 flashbacks with certain smells, particularly a burning type
15 smell. I've had people talk about 20 years later going back
16 to an incident that happened in a mine.

17 Visual sense is the next sense as you might have
18 guessed, and these also can trigger flashbacks many years
19 later. We recently have completed collecting the data on a
20 study in the last year because we were interested in what
21 happens in those first critical moments, we were
22 particularly interested in initial communications after a
23 disaster or when an emergency is identified as an emergency.

24 What we did is we went out and we interviewed
25 experts in mine emergency response all over the country, and

1 we also did some focus groups. We talked to people at the
2 mines who had experienced disaster and managed them, and we
3 also talked to mine rescue personnel.

4 It was very interesting. The data fell into two
5 very distinct categories. One, the mine rescue data, and
6 two, the on-site data. Mine rescuers get there later. They
7 aren't there immediately. So what happens is very
8 different, and their perceptions are very different in terms
9 of issues like communication.

10 We asked open-ended questions so we ended up
11 getting the story. We looked at first reactions. We wanted
12 to know what their first reactions were, what some of the
13 first decisions were that were made, some of the information
14 that they needed, and finally, what kind of recommendations
15 they would make. We wanted a lessons learned opportunity.

16 This is an ongoing study, and I'm just going to
17 give you a couple of the highlights. We're really just at
18 the tip of the iceberg here.

19 One of the key issues that surfaced was the issue
20 of judgment and decision-making. Information must be
21 accurate, and several of the experienced mine managers told
22 us that the first thing that they would recommend is stop.
23 That's unusual in an emergency to stay stop. You're in an
24 emergency. The goal is to move forward, go ahead. But
25 these seasoned mine emergency managers said stop, assess,

1 make sure that you have accurate information because the
2 decisions that you make impact the outcome.

3 They also talked a lot about the source and how
4 the source affects decision-making. If it's old, seasoned
5 miner Joe who is calling out, and is sounding very panicky
6 and concerned about the belt fire, there may be a different
7 reaction than if there a red hat or a rookie calling out.
8 So the source of information again is something that became
9 very emphasized in the interviews that we did.

10 They also talked about the fact that stress and
11 fatigue many times led to poor decisions, and that this is
12 something that certainly is evident in the command center
13 with the adrenalin pumping, people are not always relieving
14 each other as they should.

15 Another issue that came up was trust, and many
16 people, not only in the on-site mine emergency personnel,
17 but the mine rescue people talked about the issue of trust
18 and that in some instances it's more important than
19 protocol; that you are going to call on somebody that you
20 trust to take care of an issue that you must get done even
21 if protocol calls for someone else in that slot.

22 Trust is built through working together, and
23 training together. Psychologically preparation is the most
24 important activity in which to engage after a disaster. The
25 question becomes what can we do to prevent or mitigate such

1 an event. We're doing that today. This is a very important
2 event.

3 Information lowers anxiety in planning quiets
4 fears. Training, training, training, we've heard about
5 training a lot today. In the research that we have done
6 recently, we continue to hear about training and the key
7 part training plays. Knowledge is power.

8 We heard a lot about instinctive behavior. You
9 hear people say, well, I just did it. It was instinctive.
10 It was a natural thing to do. I'm probing that. What we
11 find is that instinctive behavior is the result of training.

12 Adult learning is active and problem-centered, and it's
13 important that in training that we utilize the principles of
14 adult learning. Training together, again, builds trust.

15 Recommendations: Include community mental health
16 professionals who are trained in disaster mental health, and
17 I hope you note the difference between general mental health
18 and counseling psychotherapy and disaster mental health.
19 Disaster mental health is information. It's information
20 about the normal behavior under duress, normal human
21 behavior under duress.

22 Develop a curriculum to train mine personnel on
23 the human stress response. We know this. This needs to be
24 part of our training for disaster, for escape, so that
25 people can understand the normal response. If you've never

1 had an SCSR on, and don't understand it gets hot on your
2 chest, if you don't realize that it doesn't inflate, you can
3 panic, you think it doesn't work, and you can take it off.

4 We also need to do training in judgment decision-
5 making skills, normal group escape behavior and leadership
6 in mine escape. In NIOSH, we have done some work on
7 leadership behavior that is of interest, and that could be
8 part of a curriculum.

9 We need to study the psychological aspects of
10 sheltering. We really don't know a lot about the
11 psychological aspects of sheltering. We really haven't
12 studied it. We at NIOSH have done some preparation of
13 training materials for a shelter that was built in the mid-
14 nineties out West, but we really haven't studied what
15 happens to people when they are sheltered, when they are in
16 a situation like that.

17 Finally, I would like to thank you for your
18 attention. I hope that this 180 degrees has raised a
19 consciousness of the importance of looking at human behavior
20 along with the technology as you look at mine escape.

21 Thank you.

22 (Applause.)

23 MR. KRAVITZ: Okay. Now as promised we are going
24 to have five panels with questions. I would invite Kathy
25 and Jim to stay up there because I have a couple questions

1 for you. I'm sure we will have some from the audience.

2 We're going to try to go through the questions
3 that were asked by the cards first, and then we will take
4 questions from the audience, but as promised, we will handle
5 Jerry's question. I also would like to invite Mr. Van Zyl
6 up for the panel, Mr. Oberholzer, and Alex Gryska, and John
7 Kovac.

8 Very good, come on up here. Come up here by the
9 panel. Thank you for volunteering.

10 Before you leave, we have compiled -- Maria has
11 done it, well, we have been having fun out here -- she has
12 been compiling a list of all the attendees, and please get a
13 copy if you want it. John Gibson has them down there so
14 should have enough for everybody. If not, we will make
15 some.

16 Okay, is Jerry still here from Ocenco? Okay, do
17 you want to come up and we'll ask a question. I want to
18 have some ground rules though. I'm going to give you two
19 minutes to have a retort, and Mr. Oberholzer, can begin. Is
20 that microphone on? I think so. I don't want the debate to
21 last the whole session. You understand that?

22 MR. STICKER: My name is Gerry Sticker. I am a
23 national sales manager for Ocenco, Mining Division. During
24 the presentation of Mr. Oberholzer -- I'm sorry, I have
25 trouble pronouncing your name -- I heard through your

1 presentation 100 miners died because they had wet hands and
2 could not open the Ocenco SCSR.

3 MR. OBERHOLZER: Mr. Stickler, I have thought
4 about it rather long, and I do not know at which stage I
5 could have said that. I would like to reiterate what I
6 said: that during one of the exercises, a very well-made
7 designed self-riskier could not be opened by people. This
8 does not, and I reiterate, that this does not reflect badly
9 on your project. It reflects on the ability of people when
10 they are under stress to do things that people would think
11 is normal. They cannot do it. Their hands, they were wet,
12 they were stressed, their eyes were closed, and they
13 couldn't open the self-riskier, whether it's yours or
14 whether it was a cup of coffee. They just couldn't open it.

15 MR. STICKER: On our unit, it's designed with two
16 opposing nylon straps. You pull the straps apart and the
17 unit opens.

18 MR. OBERHOLZER: Sir, I have seen them not being
19 able to open a normal self-riskier. It's not an indictment
20 on your product. It's an indictment on the situation when
21 people are trying to save themselves. They have just walked
22 for half an hour, they are walking hard. I think in this
23 case they were about 18 inches deep in mud, and they were
24 wet.

25 Now, the fact of the matter is the fact that some

1 of those boots got pulled off their feet while they were
2 walking in the mud is not an indictment on the boot, and
3 further than that, sir, I cannot offer any advice.

4 MR. FINFINGER: Okay, thank you, good.

5 We have a question from Mr. Gryska. Could you
6 tell us what was learned from the Westray Coal Mine
7 disaster?

8 MR. GRYSKA: From the Westray?

9 MR. FINFINGER: Westray, yes.

10 MR. GRYSKA: The Westray disaster was the incident
11 that occurred in Nova Scotia. Certainly the findings in
12 that particular incident were failures in the system as a
13 whole. To go into the details of the Westray, frankly, it
14 would take considerable energy.

15 The findings in that found fault on everybody
16 involved and right from senior manager at the operation, the
17 enforcement agency and everybody else. Whoever is wanting
18 information with regards to it, what I can do is give them a
19 transcript of it and they can read it to themselves. It's a
20 very complex issue. If they would like to contact me, I'll
21 be here for the next few minutes.

22 MR. FINFINGER: Okay, thank you. Next question.

23 MR. KRAVITZ: Okay, this is for Mr. Van Zyl. With
24 emphasis placed on refuge chambers, rescue rooms, this could
25 be putting people, miners at risk. I would think that these

1 chambers should at least be the last resort, which I think
2 everyone is emphasizing here, only when egress service is
3 impossible, so if you would like to comment on that.

4 MR. VAN ZYL: Yes, I think this was mentioned
5 earlier that the goal would be egress. But when this issue
6 was investigated, it was found that the condition for the
7 amount of people underground exits from surface, but at that
8 particular point in time rescue bays were the best and the
9 most effective manner of actually ensuring that the
10 workforce reached the rescue bay and then get retrieved from
11 that.

12 Again, saying is it -- I think it's time that we
13 revisit the strategy that's been put in place and maybe
14 review its efficiency.

15 MR. FINFINGER: There is a question here, we think
16 this is for Jim Joy, but if anybody else would like to
17 answer, you're welcome. It's a very general question.

18 What are we doing as to prevention? Yes, Jim.

19 MR. JOY: That's a general question, yes.

20 (Laughter.)

21 MR. FINFINGER: Do everything possible.

22 MR. JOY: Does somebody want to be more specific
23 about that question?

24 MR. VAN ZYL: Maybe I can explain this a little
25 bit.

1 MR. KRAVITZ: Yes, basically they are asking about
2 flame resistant retardant conveyor belts. You know, as sort
3 of risk analysis goes, more efficient controls, slip
4 switches, more effective electrical controls, effective CO
5 warning system, monitoring systems, you know, that kind. So
6 that gives you a little more information.

7 MR. JOY: Yes, you can certainly take a model of
8 the four different levels of control from prevent through
9 monitoring through first response and emergency response.
10 We've been talking a lot, I guess, mostly at the emergency
11 response end, and you could list out, and we went through
12 mostly chambers, but we talk about a lot about refuge-base,
13 but we talk about a lot of other things in that context.

14 You could develop a list for every hazard almost
15 as long in all three of the other areas, and the first
16 response area is the area that is developed a lot in
17 Australia, and that is, monitoring systems, real-time
18 monitoring systems which you have of course which define
19 interiors for various gases. We are looking at real-time
20 monitoring systems even for driver behavior in large trucks,
21 using Caterpillar's Minstar system so we can actually look
22 at triggers for behaviors as well as gas, that tell us the
23 behaviors or being erratic if a person is on a 12-hour
24 shift, or in the seventh week of a 12-hour shift every day
25 thing, some subcontractors in northwestern Australia has got

1 them working.

2 So it would take a long time, and you could make a
3 list of all the innovations and preventions, I suppose,
4 related to underground fire, as someone mentioned.
5 Monitoring, things that we monitor, not just the gas, but we
6 actually -- the innovation probably isn't monitoring the
7 gas. Innovation is monitoring the controls that are
8 important to keep the gas where it's supposed to be, in the
9 first response area. That's about all I can say.

10 MR. FINFINGER: Okay, thank you.

11 MR. VAN ZYL: Maybe I can just add onto that is he
12 just indicated that escape was research quad activity search
13 15 years ago. Since then major efforts have been to prevent
14 disasters, specifically around explosions. A lot of work
15 has gone in, active barriers, passive barrier systems, fire
16 retardancy, monitoring systems, where do you place these
17 systems, et cetera, et cetera.

18 So in South Africa, the focus for the last 10
19 years has been on prevention or eliminating the risk.

20 MR. FINFINGER: Thank you, Kobus.

21 This question is for Cathy Kowalski. Is it
22 possible that the ability of a rescue chamber could
23 negatively effect the miner's willingness to evacuate
24 through small conditions given the uncertainty of it later?

25 MS. KOWALSKI-TRAKOFFLER: I heard part of that. Is

1 it possible that the?

2 MR. FINFINGER: Is it possible that the
3 availability of a rescue chamber could negatively effect the
4 miner's willingness to evacuate through small conditions
5 given the uncertainty of it later?

6 MS. KOWALSKI-TRAKOFLE: That's a very interesting
7 question. We do not have a lot of data on sheltering. The
8 normal human response, which comes from data on escape from
9 structural fires, is to egress, get out, and usually there
10 are several parameters on that.

11 People tend to affiliate and leave with groups,
12 usually the groups they came in with, and the tendency is to
13 leave the same way they came in.

14 Sheltering and training miners to go into shelters
15 is the -- the training aspect is absolutely key because the
16 natural tendency is to escape.

17 Did that answer the question?

18 MR. FINFINGER: Dr. Oberholzer.

19 MR. OBERHOLZER: Mr. Chairman, I would just like
20 to add something here. In Queensland at the moment, if it
21 is directed so strongly at escaping, that we have now just
22 developed what we would call a mine rescue vehicle, which is
23 a diesel vehicle that's fitted with sensors that will allow
24 a person to get out of the mine without actually seeing the
25 roadway that he is traveling in. It wasn't part of the

1 scope that I was asked to talk about, but this information,
2 if anybody out there would like to know more about it, it's
3 available, and they can contact either contact me here or
4 later and we can discuss the matter further.

5 MR. FINFINGER: Thanks.

6 MR. KRAVITZ: That brings up a -- you just ran
7 into this next question I had in my hand, and it's an
8 interesting question. How should we address the handicapped
9 people, physical disabilities, overweight, aging miners when
10 we require walking or crawling escape routes? Should
11 vehicles be developed for these people?

12 MR. OBERHOLZER: This whole vehicle issue was
13 developed on an exercise at the Castro mine where the
14 exercise actually showed the difficulties that people or
15 brigadesmen would have when you go into the 2 kilometer plus
16 panels, and actually they are not able to reach it with the
17 oxygen that they've got on it, and we came to the conclusion
18 that there must be a better way, a faster way to get people
19 that are incapacitated out of the mine.

20 If anybody is interested, all this is written up
21 under ACOR project. It's available. You can acquire this,
22 and if anybody would like to write me, I'm sure I can supply
23 them with the latest information.

24 MR. FINFINGER: Thank you.

25 MS. KOWALSKI-TRAKOFLER: I would just like to add

1 something to that. I would think there is also a self-
2 selection aspect of that.

3 Mining is dangerous. Miners know the environment,
4 and if they can't egress, if they can't get out in danger, I
5 would suggest that in many instances they are going to self-
6 select themselves out of the workforce.

7 MR. FINFINGER: Thank you.

8 Next question is about self-rescue devices. What
9 work is being done on self-rescues to replace the current
10 goggles, mouth piece, nose clip arrangement with a full face
11 piece arrangement?

12 MR. KOVAC: None. If you have a face piece, you
13 have to be fitted. No, if you have a face piece, you have
14 to be fitted to that face piece. A self-rescuer becomes
15 yours. If you have facial hair, you have to shave it in
16 order that that face piece could be easily fit in an easily
17 accessible package. We've added size, weight, complexity to
18 the program, and as desirable as it might seem, mouth piece,
19 nose clip is a better way to go.

20 And since you deploy multiple rescuers in mines
21 along the escape ways, those face pieces would have to be
22 yours. Whether you would keep them and interface with the
23 device or not, it would still have to be your face piece.

24 MR. KRAVITZ: Thank you.

25 This one is for Mr. Van Zyl. You used computer

1 simulations as a tool for landscape planning, and the second
2 question, and this is do you use some tool for miners
3 training? The first one was computer simulation for mine
4 emergencies, and the second one was tool for miners
5 training.

6 MR. VAN ZYL: As far as my knowledge goes, we
7 haven't used any computer-based simulation to determine the
8 positioning of self-rescue bays. On the computer-based
9 training, we did start off with virtual reality training for
10 the workforce, but having a workforce that's been dominantly
11 illiterate, we found that your virtual reality training had
12 to be very, very realistic to use abstract forms and colors.

13 If you didn't represent exactly what was underground, the
14 connection was very difficult. They made the connection
15 between reality and the training on the computer-based was
16 not really brought across, so that program ended about five-
17 six years ago, but we have started looking at advancements
18 in computer simulation and obviously the increased power of
19 computers. But currently we're not using it.

20 MR. FINFINGER: Thank you.

21 The next question is for Dr. Jon Oberholzer. I
22 would like to know your opinion about additional
23 strategically located bore holes along intake entries which
24 could serve as escape openings equipped with rescue hoist
25 capsules.

1 MR. OBERHOLZER: The placement of bore holes
2 ultimately would be an economic decision. I'm not sure this
3 is going to answer it rightly. In a country where you have
4 got mines that are 150 meters deep, going down with a bore
5 hole is not expensive. If you are sitting, from what I hear
6 in West Virginia where you can go down a thousand feet to
7 get a seam, it's going to get very expensive. Then it's
8 going to be very difficult to do it.

9 The other thing that I would like to add is if I
10 look at what is being offered in the form of refuge bays at
11 the moment, one starts wondering why one wants to take the
12 effort to go very deep with a bore hole very deep in a
13 situation where it becomes almost uneconomical.

14 So I don't know if that answers the question.

15 MR. KRAVITZ: Is that because of the available
16 oxygen sources that you can actually build into the --

17 MR. OBERHOLZER: Well, if I just looked at all the
18 products that were offered this afternoon that would supply
19 oxygen, keep people there for 90 hours, 120 hours, one sits
20 and considers why would you try and drill a 1,000-foot bore
21 hole to supply air.

22 MR. KRAVITZ: Okay. Anyone else want to try that?

23 MR. FINFINGER: Okay, next question is for Kubos
24 Van Zyl. You spoke of using oxygen candles inside
25 underground shelters. How do you prevent carbon monoxide

1 from entering into the chamber from a contaminated mine
2 atmosphere?

3 MR. VAN ZYL: Oxygen candles is currently used in
4 both the limited products available in portable units, and
5 also in the fixed chambers. In the portable units, there is
6 CO scrubbers that's installed as part of the unit, and on
7 the fixed units, as far as my knowledge goes, it's actually
8 on positive pressures. You release the oxygen and that's
9 just bled into the environment, and if your environment
10 needs more oxygen, you just light another oxygen candle. So
11 there is a difference between the two, the application of
12 the two.

13 MR. FINFINGER: Thank you.

14 MR. KRAVITZ: Okay. This one, if the panel doesn't
15 feel they can address this, we can ask the manufacturers if
16 they are interested in addressing it, but this one, I think
17 the question was written before the manufacturers got up
18 here. With all the safety chambers presented, none of them
19 seem to have significant blast or fire rating. None seem to
20 insulate the occupants from extreme heat.

21 Would any manufacturer like to address that?

22 Okay, the microphone is up here.

23 MR. RAU: With the explosive proof, did they
24 mention that? They're interested in explosive or just fire
25 rating?

1 MR. KRAVITZ: Both.

2 MR. RAU: With the explosive proof, I don't think
3 anything is going to withstand a 80 psi, which people are
4 throwing around. It's an enormous force, and if we did make
5 them and manufacture them to withstand that, at the end of
6 the day they would be thrown out at the end of the drive.

7 The way we see it the refuge chambers are
8 basically there to substitute for barricading. Now, we can
9 manufacture them to be explosive proof, fire rated. There
10 is no limit to what we can do. We actually have a refuge
11 chamber in Sweden which is on a locomotive and it drives
12 itself out of the tunnel and it has heat sensing cameras
13 on it. So there is no limits. It's got 15 beds, the frig.,
14 almost the kitchen sink chucked in. So there is just no
15 limit. It's just who is going to pay for it, and what we
16 want to do with it.

17 Does that answer it?

18 MR. KRAVITZ: I think so.

19 Any other manufacturer want to address that?

20 Okay, I want to do a follow-up question. Is Randy
21 still here? Yes, there he is.

22 If you build a bulkhead type of shelter into a
23 pillar, how would a fire and explosion affect that?

24 MR. BERRY: I'm glad you called my name because I
25 want to address a couple of things on that.

1 First of all, and I have to apologize because it
2 was a long time ago, and there was one document that I
3 wasn't able to lay my hands on, but I have a problem with my
4 friend, was it Kelvin, who mentioned 80 psi. I'm not so
5 sure that's the right number.

6 That was not the number -- I know that was not the
7 number that we designed to, and as I say, we had three
8 bulkheads and all survived actual underground explosions.

9 Part of the reason for putting bulkheads in
10 crosscuts, as I outlined, was to get it out of the direct
11 line of fire so to speak. That should largely eliminate the
12 collateral damage that's caused by not just the shockwave,
13 but the debris, locomotives or whatever getting carried down
14 entries.

15 So you've got a couple of different things going.
16 You've got pressure waves and you've also got debris being
17 carried.

18 But I wouldn't go to the bank with that 80 psi
19 number. To me, that's high.

20 MR. RAU: Even 80 psi for portable rescue chambers
21 in --

22 MR. BERRY: That's what ours was designed to if my
23 memory is right. I think we designed it to, and this is
24 really 30-year-old memory, so I apologize, but I think we
25 designed it for somewhere between a 9 and 15 psi, but that

1 was not a static load. Okay, that's a dynamic load. So to
2 convert that to static you effectively -- let me finish --
3 you effectively double it.

4 Okay, so we had somewhere between basically a
5 static 20 and 30 psi. That's consistent, by the way, with a
6 Canadian report, and where else did I see? Something on the
7 order of 14 bar, which I think works out to -- help me,
8 English people -- 20 psi?

9 MR. BROWN: -- force people inside. It's not a
10 matter of the structure itself, we're saying, it's the blast
11 to minimize the force of the people on the other side.
12 Eight psi would knock somebody out, down, down, that's it,
13 they are done.

14 MR. BERRY: Yes.

15 MR. FINFINGER: Next contribution from here maybe.

16 MR. GRACIOLI: Ken Gracioli with KEM BioShelter.
17 We've been working with the West Virginia task force on the
18 issue of mine safety. One of the questions that they sent
19 us in writing was how did your shelter protect against 26
20 psi, and they said that above that level there is no sense
21 in protecting because the human body can't withstand it.

22 MR. BERRY: All right. So once again I' hearing
23 with the exception of the one presentation --

24 VOICE: I would agree those are the numbers?

25 MR. BERRY: What's that, John?

1 VOICE: Those were the numbers, 20-30 psi.

2 MR. BERRY: Okay, sounds like we are pretty
3 unanimous on that, and you can very definitely build
4 bulkheads in chambers to resist that that I don't think are
5 too overwhelming. I showed you three examples.

6 Anything else?

7 VOICE: Have you considered in that study the
8 positive and negative issues when you do an exploding, a
9 blasting situation?

10 MR. BERRY: Actually, my talk could have gone on
11 for hours. As a matter of fact, in one of the designs,
12 okay, the second design I showed that was supported from the
13 top and the bottom, but down into the floor, okay, so there
14 was very little support at the roof, and in fact we were
15 worried about it upsetting, okay, the other way, and I left
16 that out because it would have just taken too long, but it
17 is pinned into the roof to prevent it from upsetting on the
18 back swing, so to speak. That was a good question.

19 MR. KRAVITZ: Would you like to respond to that
20 then?

21 MR. WU: Yes, I would like to respond on that
22 particular.

23 We were thinking about using what it appears we
24 need, as I stated, we want also to take care of this one not
25 only for the exposure purpose and also the water. Now, that

1 was not being thought in the past. In these last 15-20
2 years many things have happened. So when people cannot get
3 out, then you get into that areas of want to be able to hold
4 in that water, and that water is combined into one of the
5 things we're talking about for that pressure, aesthetic
6 pressures.

7 Now, the other things we're talking about is on
8 grouting curvage on the roof, on the coal mesh materials.
9 When you're doing ground curving on those to prevent the
10 passage, those would need more work to be done. That's
11 probably the things we need to strengthen that from footing
12 and rib and roof. There is a lot of other problems that we
13 haven't talked about.

14 MR. FINFINGER: Okay, thank, Kevin.

15 We would like to go on to the next question. This
16 is for Joel Kovac. How will we address the storage and
17 transportational self-rescues with the manufacturer's
18 recommendations? For example, exposure to 32 degree
19 Fahrenheit.

20 MR. KOVAC: You follow the manufacturer's
21 recommendations in order to keep the device within its
22 service life plan and to keep it in approved condition.

23 The 32 degrees represents storage. Don't store it
24 at that temperature. You monitor that. If you exceed the
25 manufacturer's instructions, remove the device from service,

1 replace it with a new one.

2 MR. KRAVITZ: Okay. This one to the panel, and if
3 the panel would like to defer to the audience we can do
4 that. Should we encourage mine designers, engineers to
5 design mines with escape shaft entries with shorter routes
6 to the surface? Anyone?

7 MR. VAN ZYL: It always comes down to cost. For
8 an example, in deep South African --

9 MR. FINFINGER: Put the microphone up to your --

10 MR. VAN ZYL: I'll go to the microphone.

11 I said it's always an issue of cost. For example,
12 in deep South African gold mines the original mining layout
13 was to get to the ore most effectively and safely currently
14 due to heat loads. Mine designers are seriously taking into
15 consideration ventilation requirements when actually doing
16 the mining, the mining layouts.

17 So again, if it gets to the point where you have
18 multiple fatalities, potentially can be brought into the
19 design criteria. But again, it's open for debate.

20 MR. GRYSKA: What I would like to do is talk about
21 what we do in Ontario. There is legislative requirements in
22 Ontario to have a second means of egress. So in fact we do
23 have a second escape way and it's mandated by legislation.
24 But mind you again, we don't have coal mines.

25 MR. FINFINGER: Okay, thank you.

1 Next question, doesn't having a stove in the
2 refuge station present an explosion hazard? A stove.

3 MR. VAN ZYL: Depends if the mine is classified as
4 a fire mine or non-firing mine. If it's a firing mine,
5 definitely. I don't know a flame proof or intrinsically
6 safe stove, but again it depends on the -- well, in South
7 Africa it will depend on the classification of the mine.

8 MR. KRAVITZ: Same thing holds true for
9 electricity like microwaves and refrigerators.

10 MR. VAN ZYL: Exactly.

11 MR. KRAVITZ: I think some of the things -- most
12 refuge chambers we saw pictures of that were actually
13 mental/nonmetal mines, and it really didn't apply to the
14 coal situation.

15 Probably you want to put MREs with the heatable,
16 open it up and heat the other, you know, that's another
17 question about the MREs, would that do anything.

18 Okay, I don't know if anyone knows the answer to
19 this one. You know, we would have to dig into our
20 databases, but how much caches are there today in all coal
21 mines? Are mines required to report the number of caches?

22 Anybody want to take off? Is Terry there, Terry
23 Bentley?

24 I know that coal, you know, has plans for all
25 caches currently, and the cache storage plans, and I'm sure

1 that all those are reported back into the system, but I've
2 never seen a report, and maybe someone from coal, anyone
3 here want to answer that one?

4 Okay. We will see if we can get an answer for you.

5 If you could come up and identify yourself on this card,
6 we'll definitely get an answer for you, okay?

7 MR. FINFINGER: Okay. If a sustainable IE
8 nonventing liquid air supply could be developed for rescue
9 chambers, would be beneficial to have an air supply of
10 greater than 5 days. If more than five days, what quantity
11 is desirable?

12 MR. KRAVITZ: Interesting question. How many days
13 would you actually prepare for? Anyone want to take a stab?
14 One day more than you need, right?

15 (Laughter.)

16 MR. KRAVITZ: That seems like it would be a real
17 hypothetical there.

18 Has any work been done on infrared imaging to
19 penetrate smoke? I think we saw in one example. Bud Meyer
20 was showing a face piece with -- and Chuck was showing the
21 IRs too, I know he's been working on that.

22 That's all the written questions. I think we have
23 time for some questions from the audience. If anyone wants
24 to ask a question, please come to the microphone, identify
25 yourself, and then if you have someone you want to ask the

1 question of, please do so.

2 MR. PAPEO: Christopher Papeo from NexTec
3 Materials in Columbus, Ohio.

4 The question is probably for Dr. Oberholzer or
5 perhaps Mr. Van Zyl. We have the capability in NexTec
6 materials to make oxygen from water by a kind of reverse
7 fuel cell technology, so we don't have to bring any
8 compressed air tanks or oxygen tanks into the coal mines
9 since coal and methane are explosive with air and oxygen.

10 I'm thinking that this would be a great advantage
11 for perhaps in rescue chambers as a way of bringing in
12 oxygen and air, and you know, if air/oxygen compressed tanks
13 get ruptured from one of these explosions we've just been
14 talking about, 20 psi explosion or so, they could add to the
15 problem in the emergency.

16 So I'm wondering from your experience, or it could
17 be anybody but I'm just kind of curious what Mr. Oberholzer
18 would say, if that could be a great advantage to be able to
19 generate oxygen that way on demand as opposed to having a
20 storage of oxygen.

21 MR. OBERHOLZER: I would think that in a portable
22 cell or refuge bay the ability to have oxygen would be very
23 advantageous on one condition. I don't think the generating
24 facility must actually take up too much space.

25 One thing as I pointed out previously it is quite

1 evident, if we look at all the products in offer and the new
2 technology that is available, that I think the whole
3 original theory of piping a down bay and only using candles,
4 well, that is passe nowadays. I think there is new
5 technology that is going to overtake us and bring a whole
6 new, I would say a new generation of refuge bays that
7 possibly I might even not know about to the fore.

8 This is a typical type of thing as in my talk I
9 pointed out that there are certain inputs from the
10 environment that create or stimulate the growth of things.
11 Failure is going to create the growth of a new generation of
12 things out there that the mining people can -- for some it's
13 going to be easy, for some it's going to be difficult, but
14 the new products are going to be there.

15 I hope that answers the question.

16 MR. PAPEO: That was helpful. Thank you.

17 MR. MCKENNA: Tom McKenna with Micropore, Inc., a
18 manufacturer of CO2 absorbants, and I guess I had a couple
19 of comments and maybe a question relative to acceptable CO2
20 levels within some of the shelter scenarios.

21 I know the U.S. Navy in their submarine has
22 approved our product for use and is able to supply seven
23 days of life support at a 3 percent maximum CO2 level. NATO
24 submarine fleets have also accepted levels at 2.5 percent.
25 I saw a couple of levels that were down around the 1 percent

1 for the mine safety shelters.

2 I guess, you know, in the diving community and
3 submarine safety community we have seen that you can support
4 life -- life support is acceptable up to exposures of 3
5 percent for up to 40 days without any physiological effect,
6 and I guess we would recommended that NIOSH and MSHA set a
7 level that's somewhere in that 3 percent range.

8 I know that with the re-breathers and SCSRs half
9 percent to 1 percent seems to be the accepted level, and
10 that's great for working environments, but with an emergency
11 safety shelter situation, higher levels are probably
12 acceptable.

13 So I guess the closing question is what is the
14 intent for acceptable CO2 levels within the safety shelters?

15 MR. KOVAC: If you regard a refuge chamber as a
16 respirator, closed-circuit respirator for a lot of people,
17 there are standards for certifying the same, or stipulated
18 what the performance has to be over a required time period.

19 So you are right to raise those issues. The 2 or 3
20 percent, I wouldn't see that as a problem. It would make it
21 technically easier to achieve.

22 But again, there are no standards. And so when
23 people make claims about the performance of those chambers,
24 those are claims that need to be verified, and it's best to
25 do that in as scientifically sound manner as possible. So

1 if we're not talking standards, we're at least talking about
2 somehow making sure that the chambers do what we intend them
3 to do, but that remains to be seen.

4 We all have to reach some common agreement, what
5 safe life support capacity is, what sedentary oxygen
6 rates/consumption are, are the people in the 1983 report I
7 had done, are people really going to be sedentary, aren't
8 they going to be managing the functions of the chamber.
9 They are going to be moving about. Somebody is going to
10 have to attend to or monitor the oxygen generator. There is
11 going to be other things to be dealt with. So to project a
12 flat three-tenths of a liter uptake per minute of oxygen or
13 half a liter per minute of uptake, that may be wrong. You
14 might have to have fluctuations.

15 So there are issues like that that have to be
16 dealt with, but primarily what's a safe level, how do you
17 verify it, how do you verify what the claims are for these
18 chambers, or what ought they to be, what performance should
19 we stipulate.

20 MR. MCKENNA: Thanks.

21 MR. PINKLEY: Jim Pinkley. I'm the market manager
22 for Hilde Mining, 13-year underground experienced miner,
23 mine manager, degreed engineer.

24 One of the questions I have is to Alex. It seems
25 that sealing seems to be a big issue with the refuge

1 chambers and use of the chambers in Ontario in practical
2 terms. In regards to that, you know, there is a lot of
3 concern over explosions and what is going to happen with the
4 chambers and so forth, but I'm not seeing an interest in
5 having materials for the miners when they escape to the
6 chamber.

7 If there is damage to these chambers, if they are
8 going to be able to do anything to be able to fix that.
9 That sealing doesn't seem to be on the radar screen for us
10 here in the U.S. while it's been the top five important
11 issues for Ontario, and I would like for Alex to comment on
12 his practical experience, and then I would like to hear from
13 dr. Rau and some of the other personnel here within the U.S.
14 on where we are at with sealing. Go ahead, Alex.

15 MR. GRYSKA: Okay. By the sealing, you're
16 referring to the sealing the door closure, is that correct,
17 or --

18 MR. PINKLEY: Yes, and having materials to seal
19 with.

20 MR. GRYSKA: Yes, okay.

21 MR. PINKLEY: I mean, you know, we have seen a lot
22 of the manufacturers put up their information, but I don't
23 see how if there is damage to the -- if there is damage to
24 the facility, how the miners have any recourse here, you
25 know, and you're all talking about, you know, 20 psi, 30

1 psi, debris waves. You know, in real life let's face
2 reality. Things are going to happen.

3 MR. GRYSKA: Yes. Okay. During my talk, I did
4 mention to you the hazards that our mines are exposed to are
5 very different than that of the coal mine environment.
6 Certainly the occurrence of methane is very rare in our
7 mines. Secondly, one of the other hazards is we do get
8 sulfide dust explosions.

9 Our experience has been is when we do have
10 something of that serious nature, knock on wood, it hasn't
11 happened very often. We had in the mid-eighties a situation
12 whereby we had a sulfide dust explosion. There were only
13 three miners underground, and two of them were fatally
14 injured, a third one survived. They didn't even have an
15 opportunity to go to the refuge station.

16 MR. PINKLEY: I guess my question is more in the
17 fact that when your miner is trying to go to that refuge
18 station, do they not use the sealing materials to seal
19 themselves in?

20 MR. GRYSKA: Yes. Absolutely. Yes.

21 MR. PINKLEY: That's exactly what my point is.

22 MR. GRYSKA: Oh, yes.

23 MR. PINKLEY: We're not making any preparations to
24 allow the miners here to have that option in case there is
25 any type of damage, and I just think we are overlooking some

1 key issues here.

2 MR. GRYSKA: One of the things that we do focus a
3 lot on in Ontario is training, training our miner rescue
4 teams, training our miners as far as refuge stations. As
5 mentioned to you, we do have fire drills and we do run
6 simulations, and in some of those circumstances they will go
7 as far as sealing themselves into the refuge station to make
8 sure they are functioning properly.

9 MR. KOVAC: I would like to make a comment too.
10 One of the reasons that you would evacuate a refuge chamber
11 is that you were incapacitated, you're injured, things are
12 going against you. To make the assumption that everyone in
13 that chamber will be fit, will survive that experience is
14 short-sighted.

15 When you look at the report we did in '83, one of
16 the requirements was to include body bags. The ability to
17 handle casualties, to handle fatalities, and do it with a
18 manner and decency and everything like that.

19 Refuge chambers are very hard to deal with. What
20 has to be in them, how you train people to deal with going
21 into them, what you expect those people to do while they are
22 inside, how they will react to tragedies, but you need to
23 begin considering things like body bags, the ability of the
24 miner to repair the miners who are so in shelter to repair
25 that shelter in the event that there is damage, bring it

1 back up to gas-tight condition whenever it's sealed. All
2 those things have to be factored in.

3 MR. KRAVITZ: Excellent point. Kevin has a
4 comment to make.

5 MR. WU: I want to answer that question. I was
6 trying to talk before that question could be raised. In all
7 the years we're talking about the barricades --

8 MR. KRAVITZ: Lower that microphone a little bit
9 for you, sir.

10 MR. WU: In a mining emergency conditions for a
11 miner to be able to barricades and never could build ones
12 which to serve its purpose. It's very difficult. So the
13 important things, you know, everybody agreed, the aims is
14 you've got to have some kind of refuge chambers for the last
15 choice. So hopefully again design, no damage.

16 Now, grooves you 100 percent, you needed some
17 materials, whatever that needed to be discussed to finalize
18 what needed to be there be put into use. That should have
19 been no argument. When you say hopefully you're going to
20 design something that would not be damaged the first thing,
21 because when you have an emergency like this if something
22 happens, it's always difficult, always difficult, and all
23 the barricades through the years you can never build it in a
24 short period of time, and to serve its purpose.

25 MR. KRAVITZ: Okay, we have time for one more

1 question. That's the last one. Fortunate you are.

2 MR. RAU: Just quickly wanted to make the point
3 the difference between a sealed environment and a leaking
4 environment. Two completely separate systems. In a sealed
5 environment you have to scrub the atmosphere. In a leaking
6 environment you have to ensure that everything that goes
7 into that chamber must come out, so that's a compressed air
8 style system. You cannot use oxygen-generating tools in a
9 leaking environment. It doesn't work. You have to scrub
10 the oxygen, otherwise the carbon dioxide builds up, so there
11 is succinct difference in between the two systems. I think
12 that's just something that's been missed.

13 MR. KRAVITZ: Kathy, you were about to tackle the
14 microphone, so you better ask a question.

15 MS. SNYDER: Kathy Snyder, Mine Safety & Health
16 News. Basic question. I think we have heard at least one
17 coal mine, if I remember correctly, make a decision to use
18 refuge chambers. I understand it's a difficult thing in
19 coal mines because you can have different scenarios. You
20 could have a second explosion. You could have an engulfing
21 and overwhelming fire, but then again you might not in a
22 coal mine have those things happen.

23 And I was wondering if anyone has any information
24 on the decision process that one or mine operators in coal
25 may have gone through deciding to use these chambers or not

1 use these chambers.

2 MR. KRAVITZ: Anyone?

3 MS. SNYDER: No baseline.

4 MR. BROWN: No baseline so there is not --

5 MS. SNYDER: Right.

6 MR. BROWN: I'm shocked. Quite frankly, I'm
7 shocked. I'm not in this business. So how do you arrive at
8 what you require if you don't know what needs to be --

9 MS. SNYDER: Did someone say there was a New
10 Zealand mine in coal that --

11 MR. RAU: In Australia, all our mines have to be
12 treated with that. Essentially you couldn't put that unit
13 into the coal mine. In New Zealand, same as the U.S.

14 MS. SNYDER: Do you know how they decided that
15 this was a good thing to do even though it was a coal mine
16 and there were some possible scenarios where it might be
17 worse than -- you might be worse off?

18 MR. RAU: (Not on microphone.) I guess it's just
19 an area in the mine which I saw that it wouldn't address
20 that successfully. It's one single chamber, it's not the
21 whole mine.

22 MS. SNYDER: Thanks.

23 MR. KRAVITZ: And one last, last question.

24 MR. LONG: Yes, I want to talk about that also.
25 I'm Gary Long from BHPBilliton, New Mexico, San Juan

1 Underground, and we decided in January that we were going to
2 do the right thing and build some refuge chambers and beings
3 we are an Australian-owned company we had plenty of
4 information of how to build those, what to put in them,
5 doing risk assessments, that type of thing, and we done some
6 testing with rescuers at our mine, it's about a six -- well,
7 not even a 6 percent decline.

8 We done some testing with the CSE100s, and
9 determined that we were going to put rescue chambers or
10 refuge chambers we call them every five to six thousand
11 feet. On the testing we done, we were able to -- one 6,400-
12 foot walk and another person 7,400-foot, so we just went
13 with the five to six to keep our refuge chambers far enough
14 apart that you could actually walk, get in fresh air, we've
15 got more bore holes to each one, getting fresh air to change
16 rescuers and keep moving. And then if egress is stopped,
17 then we could use those chambers to stay in, and they have
18 everything that we've seen here today. They have everything
19 plus that.

20 MR. BROWN: Looking at anticipation that distance,
21 so -- (not on microphone.)

22 MR. LONG: Yes, that's basically it, is that every
23 5,000 feet, we know we can make it that far. If not, we'll
24 stop, and every panel has two of them. The way things are
25 going we've got 1,250-foot panels, and we're making a lot of

1 assumptions doing this but we thought it was the right thing
2 to do psychologically for the coal miners also. They have
3 another opportunity there if something should happen, so I
4 think psychologically the miners are more of these by having
5 such another instrument, and I think it's the right thing to
6 do.

7 MR. KRAVITZ: Okay, thank you very much.

8 I think we have accomplished our mission today,
9 stimulated thought, and we have identified quite a few
10 things for a research agenda, and I would like to thank all
11 of you for coming today, but be sure to pick up the
12 attendance list. Thank you. It's been a pleasure working
13 with you. Thank you, panel.

14 (Applause.)

15 (Whereupon, at 5:34 p.m., the workshop was
16 concluded.)

17 //

18 //

19 //

20 //

21 //

22 //

23 //

24 //

25 //

REPORTER'S CERTIFICATE

DOCKET NO.: None
CASE TITLE: Mine Escape Planning Workshop
HEARING DATE: April 18, 2006
LOCATION: Washington, D.C.

I hereby certify that the proceedings and evidence are contained fully and accurately on the tapes and notes reported by me at the hearing in the above case before the Department of Labor.

Date: April 18, 2006

Christina Chesley
Official Reporter
Heritage Reporting Corporation
Suite 600
1220 L Street, N.W.
Washington, D.C. 20005-4018

Heritage Reporting Corporation

(202) 628-4888